

5th
PRIM.

HS
STONE

2026



Second Term



Table of contents

Module 1

Unit 1

Hobbies Make us Shine!

Lesson 1	10
Practice on Lesson 1	14
Lesson 2	16
Practice on Lesson 2	22
Lesson 3	24
Practice on Lesson 3	28
Lessons 4 and 5	30
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	34
Unit Review	36
Check Your Vocabulary	37
Writing Time	38
Student's Book Corner	39
Test Yourself 1	40
Test Yourself 2	42
Al-Azhar Corner	44

Unit 2

At the Doctor's

Lesson 1	46
Practice on Lesson 1	50
Lesson 2	52
Practice on Lesson 2	58
Lesson 3	60
Practice on Lesson 3	64
Lessons 4 and 5	66
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	71
Unit Review	73
Check Your Vocabulary	74
Writing Time	75
Student's Book Corner	76
Test Yourself 1	77
Test Yourself 2	79
Al-Azhar Corner	81
Al Adwaa Revision on February	82
Al Adwaa Tests on February	86

Module 2

Unit 3

Suitcase Stories

Lesson 1	91
Practice on Lesson 1	95
Lesson 2	97
Practice on Lesson 2	103
Lesson 3	105
Practice on Lesson 3	109
Lessons 4 and 5	111
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	115
Unit Review	117
Check Your Vocabulary	118
Writing Time	119
Student's Book Corner	120
Test Yourself 1	121
Test Yourself 2	123
Al-Azhar Corner	125

Unit 4

Jobs in the Animal Kingdom

Lesson 1	127
Practice on Lesson 1	130
Lesson 2	132
Practice on Lesson 2	140
Lesson 3	142
Practice on Lesson 3	146
Lessons 4 and 5	148
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	151
Unit Review	153
Check Your Vocabulary	155
Writing Time	156
Student's Book Corner	157
Test Yourself 1	158
Test Yourself 2	160
Al-Azhar Corner	162
Al Adwaa Revision on March	163
Al Adwaa Tests on March	166



Module 3

Unit 5 Our Solar System

Lesson 1	171
Practice on Lesson 1	175
Lesson 2	177
Practice on Lesson 2	184
Lesson 3	186
Practice on Lesson 3	190
Lessons 4 and 5	192
Practice on Lessons 4 and 5	197
Unit Review	199
Check Your Vocabulary	200
Writing Time	201
Student's Book Corner	202
Test Yourself 1	203
Test Yourself 2	205
Al-Azhar Corner	207

Unit 6 Offline but Happy (Story)

Vocabulary and story elements	210
Story	213
Practice - Story	218

Final Revision and Tests

Revision on Units 1 and 2	221
Revision on Units 3 and 4	229
Revision on Unit 5	238
Story Corner	242
Conjugation of Verbs	245
Final Tests	247
Al-Azhar Tests	285
Tapescripts	295
Writing Answers	299
Dictation Copybook	304





MODULE 1

Unit 1 : Hobbies Make Us Shine!

Unit 2 : At the Doctor's

Unit

1

Hobbies Make us Shine!

الهوايات تجعلنا نتألق!



Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- recognize and understand vocabulary related to hobbies. - يتعرف على الكلمات المتعلقة بالهوايات ويفهمها.
- identify main ideas and details from short dialogs and stories about hobbies. - يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل في المحادثات والقصص القصيرة عن الهوايات.
- follow oral instructions for classroom activities such as surveys or activities. - يتبع التعليمات الشفهية للأنشطة الصفية مثل الاستبيانات أو الأنشطة.

Speaking:

- express their favorite hobbies using simple sentences. - يعبر عن هوايته المفضلة باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- share past and present abilities using can / can't/ could/ couldn't. - يشارك القدرات الماضية والحاضرة باستخدام can/ can't/ could/ couldn't.
- participate in pair and group discussions about hobbies and present ideas confidently. - يشارك في مناقشات ثنائية وجماعية حول الهوايات وتقديم الأفكار بثقة.
- role-play hobby-related situations. - يمثل مواقف متعلقة بالهوايات (تمثيل الأدوار).

Reading:

- read short texts and stories about hobbies for main ideas and details. - يقرأ نصوصًا وقصصًا قصيرة عن الهوايات لاستخلاص الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل.
- identify sequencing words in informational texts. - يحدد كلمات الترتيب في النصوص المعلوماتية.
- recognize suffixes (-ment, -ship) in context and understand their meanings. - يتعرف على اللواحق (-ment, -ship) في السياق ويفهم معانيها.
- answer comprehension questions related to texts. - يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بالنصوص.

Writing:

- write sentences about their hobby using can/ could. - يكتب جملًا عن هوايته باستخدام can/ could.
- organize steps for starting a hobby using sequencing words. - ينظم خطوات بدء هواية باستخدام كلمات الترتيب.
- complete a short survey and write answers clearly. - يكمل استبيانًا قصيرًا ويكتب الإجابات بوضوح.
- produce a short-guided paragraph about hobbies with a title, correct spelling, and punctuation. - ينتج فقرة قصيرة موجهة عن الهوايات تتضمن عنوانًا وإملاءً صحيحًا وعلامات ترقيم مناسبة.



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



playing board games
لعب ألعاب الطاولة



cycling
ركوب الدراجات



skating
التزلج



painting
الرسم باستخدام الألوان



singing
الغناء



solving puzzles
حل الألغاز



playing the piano
عزف البيانو



crafting with paper
الأشغال اليدوية بالورق

Extra vocabulary

hobby	هواية	talent show	عرض المواهب	drawing	الرسم
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	story writing	كتابة القصص	journals	يوميات
coloring	التلوين	special (adj)	مميز	joy	متعة

Expressions and Phrases

That sounds fun!	هذا يبدو ممتعاً!	count as	يعتبر	wonderful choices	اختيارات رائعة
------------------	------------------	----------	-------	-------------------	----------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
share	شارك	shared	شارك
perform	يؤدي	performed	أدى
Irregular verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة	Present	Past
bring	يحضّر	brought	حضّر
write	يكتب	wrote	كتب
forget	ينسى	forgot	نسّى
make	يصنع	made	صنّع

Definitions	talent	a natural skill	مهارة طبيعية
	crafting	making something with your hands	صناعة أشياء باستخدام يديك
	cycling	riding a bicycle	ركوب الدراجة
	singing	using your voice for music	استخدام صوتك في الموسيقى
	solving puzzles	a game where you join pieces together	لعبة تقوم فيها بضم القطع معًا

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 We have a hobby talent (game – show – story – choice) at school.
- 2 Salma does some (solving – skating – crafting – cycling) with paper.
- 3 Yara will (study – draw – write – perform) by playing the piano.
- 4 I like (playing – drawing – singing – fishing) board games with my family.
- 5 The talent (puzzle – music – show – skate) will be amazing.
- 6 Our teacher tells us that hobbies make us (angry – bad – sad – special).

2. Choose the correct word for each definition:

- 1 A is a game where you join pieces together.
a) cycling b) puzzle c) craft d) song
- 2 Using your voice for music is called
a) talent b) crafting c) singing d) cycling
- 3 A is a natural skill.
a) puzzle b) talent c) cycling d) crafting
- 4 Making something with your hands is called
a) crafting b) singing c) talent d) cycling
- 5 is when you ride a bicycle.
a) Singing b) Crafting c) Solving puzzles d) Cycling



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



Teacher

Next week we'll have a "**Hobby Talent Show class**". Who wants to share their hobby?

الأسبوع القادم سيكون لدينا «حصة عرض مواهب الهوايات». من يرغب في مشاركة هوايته؟

Me! I'll show my drawing and painting. I can also do some crafting with paper.

أنا! سأعرض رسوماتي ولوحاتي. يمكنني أيضًا القيام ببعض الأعمال اليدوية باستخدام الورق.



Maya



Adam

That sounds fun! I think I'll perform by playing the piano and singing a song.

يبدو ذلك ممتعًا! أعتقد أنني سأؤدي عرضًا من خلال العزف على البيانو وغناء أغنية.

On weekends, I love cycling and skating in the park. Maybe I can bring a picture of that.

في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع، أحب ركوب الدراجة والتزلج في الحديقة. ربما يمكنني إحضار صورة لذلك.



Maya



Adam

I enjoy solving puzzles and playing board games with my family. Could that count as a hobby?

أستمتع بحل الألغاز ولعب ألعاب الطاولة مع عائلتي. هل يمكن اعتبار ذلك هواية؟

Story writing is my hobby. I sometimes write stories or journals.

كتابة القصص هي هوايتي. أحيانًا أكتب قصصًا أو يوميات.



Nour



Maya

Don't forget coloring—we love it! This talent show will be amazing!

لا تنس التلوين—نحن نحبه! سيكون عرض المواهب هذا مذهلاً!

Wonderful choices, everyone! Remember, hobbies make us special. Next week, bring your hobby to life and share your joy with the class!

اختيارات رائعة، جميعًا! تذكروا، الهوايات تجعلنا مميزين. في الأسبوع القادم، اجعلوا هواياتكم تنبض بالحياة وشاركوا فرحتكم مع الصف!



Teacher



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The teacher tells the students about a "Hobby Talent Show class".
- يخبر المعلم الطلاب عن «حصة عرض مواهب الهوايات».
- ✓ Maya will show her drawing and painting. She might do some crafting with paper.
- ستعرض مايا رسوماتها ولوحاتها، وقد تقوم ببعض الأعمال اليدوية باستخدام الورق.
- ✓ Adam will perform by playing the piano and singing a song.
- سيؤدي آدم عرضًا بعزف البيانو، وغناء أغنية.
- ✓ Maya loves cycling and skating in the park.
- تحب مايا ركوب الدراجات والتزلج في الحديقة.
- ✓ Adam enjoys solving puzzles and playing board games with his family.
- يستمتع آدم بحل الألغاز ولعب ألعاب الطاولة مع عائلته.
- ✓ Nour's hobby is story writing, she sometimes writes stories or journals.
- هواية نور هي كتابة القصص؛ فهي أحيانًا تكتب قصصًا أو يوميات.
- ✓ The teacher tells them that hobbies make them special.
- يخبرهم المعلم أن الهوايات تجعلهم مميزين.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Read again and write (T) true or (F) false:



- ① Maya likes swimming and fishing. ()
- ② Adam wants to play the piano and sing. ()
- ③ Nour enjoys puzzles and board games. ()
- ④ The students are planning a talent show. ()

2. Answer the following questions:

- ① What hobby does Maya want to show?

.....

- ② What does Adam want to do in the show?

.....

- ③ What hobby does Nour enjoy?

.....



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Adam will perform by painting. (.....)
- 2 Maya does not enjoy cycling or skating. (.....)
- 3 Nour's hobby is writing stories and journals. (.....)
- 4 The teacher says that hobbies make them special. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Sarah is very good at pictures of nature and animals.
a) singing b) drawing c) walking d) reading
- 2 Omar spends his free time new songs.
a) cooking b) painting c) singing d) swimming
- 3 The art teacher at school teaches students with colors and brushes.
a) skating b) running c) writing d) painting
- 4 Sama enjoys doing with paper.
a) crafting b) stories c) studying d) skating
- 5 Omar loves playing with his family.
a) painting b) cycling c) crafts d) board games
- 6 Hobbies are helpful. They make people
a) bored b) sleeping c) special d) tired
- 7 My favorite is reading stories before bed.
a) subject b) hobby c) sport d) job
- 8 My sister enjoys in her free time. She loves joining pieces together. Super Question ?
a) solving puzzles b) eating c) sleeping d) painting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

talent – cycling – sing – skating – coloring

Everyone has a special hobby they enjoy in their free time. I love (1) in the park because it keeps me active. On weekends, I go (2) with my friends. At home, I spend time (3) beautiful pictures. These activities show my special (4)

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Next week, our school will have a big Talent Show. Everyone is very excited. Ali will play the piano and sing a beautiful song he learned for the event. He practices every day after school. Mazen will show his amazing art skills by drawing and painting a large picture. Nour likes story writing; she sometimes writes stories or journals. The teachers are proud of all the students for sharing their talents. It will be a fun and exciting day for everyone.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 - a) a boring day
 - b) a talent show
 - c) sports competition
 - d) music lesson
- 2 Mazen will show his art skills by large pictures.
 - a) drawing and painting
 - b) reading
 - c) cycling
 - d) playing football

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who will play the piano and sing a song?
- 4 What does Nour like to do?
- 5 Why are the teachers proud of all the students?

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 does – cycle – like – Where – Farida – to?
- 2 favorite – my – Reading – is – hobby.
- 3 crafting – paper – with – likes – Maged.
- 4 and – Hussein – puzzles – board – enjoys – games.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 who wants to share their hobby
- 2 i enjoy playing board games with my family



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

activities	أنشطة	free time	وقت الفراغ
teamwork	العمل الجماعي	problem solving	حل المشكلات
patience	الصبر	energetic (adj)	نشيط

Extra vocabulary

schoolwork	واجبات مدرسية	important (adj)	هام
creativity	الإبداع	younger	أصغر سناً
well	حسناً - بطريقة جيدة	quickly	بسرعة
a few	عدد قليل من	pieces	قطع
outside	بالخارج	skills	مهارات
simple (adj)	بسيط	smarter	أذكى

Expressions and Phrases

have fun	يستمتع	for example	على سبيل المثال
for life	للحياة - مدى الحياة	spend more time	يقضي المزيد من الوقت

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
relax	يستريح	relaxed		practice	يتدرب	practiced	
finish	ينهى	finished		place	يضع	placed	
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
spend	يقضي	spent		choose	يختار	chose	

Hobbies Really Count!

الهوايات مهمة حقًا!



Warm up

Why do you think hobbies are important?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Hobbies are the **activities**⁽¹⁾ we love to do in our **free time**⁽²⁾. They are not **schoolwork**⁽³⁾, but things that bring us joy.

Hobbies are important because they help us **relax**⁽⁴⁾, have fun, and stay healthy. **For example**⁽⁵⁾, when people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn **teamwork**⁽⁶⁾ and problem-solving. When they sing or play the piano, they practice **patience**⁽⁷⁾ and **creativity**⁽⁸⁾. When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and **energetic**⁽⁹⁾.

Hobbies also show how people grow. Many children can draw, paint, or write stories now, but when they were younger, they couldn't do these activities well. Some people can finish puzzles quickly today, but before they could only **place**⁽¹⁰⁾ a few pieces.

In the past, children could **spend**⁽¹¹⁾ more time **outside**⁽¹²⁾ running, skating, or fishing. Today, we can **choose**⁽¹³⁾ from many hobbies that help us learn **skills**⁽¹⁴⁾ for life.

The main idea is simple: hobbies are not only fun, they make us smarter, stronger, and happier.

(1)	أنشطة
(2)	وقت الفراغ
(3)	واجبات مدرسية
(4)	نستريح
(5)	على سبيل المثال
(6)	عمل جماعي
(7)	الصبر
(8)	الإبداع
(9)	نشط
(10)	يضع
(11)	يقضى
(12)	بالخارج
(13)	يختار
(14)	مهارات

✓ Checkpoint

1 What are hobbies?

2 Why are hobbies important?

الهوايات هي الأنشطة التي نحب القيام بها في أوقات فراغنا. إنها ليست واجبات مدرسية، بل أشياء تجلب لنا السعادة. الهوايات مهمة لأنها تساعدنا على الاسترخاء، والاستمتاع، والحفاظ على صحتنا. على سبيل المثال، عندما يلعب الناس ألعاب الطاولة أو يحلون الألغاز، فإنهم يتعلمون العمل الجماعي وحل المشكلات. عندما يغنون أو يعزفون على البيانو، فإنهم يمارسون الصبر والإبداع. عندما يذهبون لركوب الدراجات أو التزلج، فإنهم يحافظون على قوتهم ونشاطهم كما تُظهر الهوايات كيف ينمو الناس. يستطيع العديد من الأطفال الرسم أو التلوين أو كتابة القصص الآن، ولكن عندما كانوا أصغر سنًا، لم يتمكنوا من القيام بهذه الأنشطة بشكل جيد. يستطيع بعض الناس حل الألغاز بسرعة اليوم، بينما كانوا في السابق قادرين على وضع بعض قطع فقط. في الماضي، كان بإمكان الأطفال قضاء المزيد من الوقت في الخارج في الجري أو التزلج أو صيد الأسماك. اليوم، يمكننا الاختيار من بين العديد من الهوايات التي تساعدنا على تعلم مهارات مدى الحياة.

الفكرة الرئيسية بسيطة: الهوايات ليست ممتعة فحسب، بل تجعلنا أكثر ذكاءً وقوة وسعادة.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our free time.
- الهوايات هي الأنشطة التي نحب القيام بها في وقت فراغنا.
- ✓ Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy.
- الهوايات مهمة لأنها تساعدنا على الاسترخاء، والاستمتاع، والحفاظ على صحتنا.
- ✓ When people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn teamwork and problem-solving.
- عندما يلعب الناس ألعاب الطاولة أو يحلون الألغاز يتعلمون العمل الجماعي وحل المشكلات.
- ✓ When they sing or play the piano, they practice patience and creativity.
- عندما يغنون أو يعزفون على البيانو يمارسون الصبر والإبداع.
- ✓ When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and energetic.
- عندما يذهبون لركوب الدراجات أو التزلج فإنهم يظلون أقوياء ونشيطين.
- ✓ Hobbies also show how people grow.
- الهوايات تُظهر أيضًا كيف ينمو الناس ويتطورون.
- ✓ Hobbies are not only fun, they make us smarter, stronger, and happier.
- الهوايات ليست ممتعة فقط، بل تجعلنا أكثر ذكاءً، قوةً، وسعادةً.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① (Exams – Chores – Hobbies – Pieces) are activities we love to do in our free time.
- ② Working to fix a broken toy needs good (problem solving – free time – activities – patience) skills.
- ③ When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and (lazy – angry – sad – energetic).
- ④ Children could (spend – play – choose – finish) more time outside running, skating, or fishing.
- ⑤ Hobbies (love – make – finish – play) us smarter, stronger, and happier.
- ⑥ During the weekend, I enjoy different (activities – patience – energetic – teamwork) like drawing and cycling.
- ⑦ Reading and playing sports are great ways to use your (problem – free time – energetic – schoolwork).
- ⑧ When we work together on a project, we learn the importance of (games – activities – teamwork – energetic).

Language in Use

Expressing Ability التعبير عن القدرة

To express ability in the present:

للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع:

We use **can** to show what someone is able to do now.

نستخدم "can" لنعبر عما يستطيع شخص ما فعله الآن.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (فاعل) + **can** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...e.g. She **can play** the piano.

هي تستطيع عزف البيانو.

You **can do** it.

يمكنك فعلها.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (فاعل) + **cannot (can't)** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...e.g. They **can't skate**.

هم لا يستطيعون التزلج.

Omar **can't sleep** because of noise.

عمر لا يستطيع أن ينام بسبب الضوضاء.



Got it:

Salma can (**reading**) books.● الإجابة الصحيحة هي "read" لأن بعد **can** يأتي الفعل في المصدر.

To express ability in past:

للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي:

We use **could** to show what someone was able to do in the past.

نستخدم "could" لنعبر عما كان يستطيع شخص فعله في الماضي.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (فاعل) + **could** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...e.g. I **could read** short stories when I was six.

كنت أستطيع قراءة القصص القصيرة عندما كنت في السادسة من عمري.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (فاعل) + **could not (couldn't)** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...e.g. She **couldn't draw** when she was younger.

لم تكن تستطيع الرسم عندما كانت أصغر سنًا.

I **couldn't come** early yesterday.

لم أستطع أن أتى مبكرًا أمس.



Got it:

Mariam(can) ride bikes when she was five.

● الإجابة الصحيحة (could) لأنها تعبر عن القدرة في الماضي.



Note

للتحدث عن القدرات في الماضي، من الممكن أن نستخدم أحد الصيغ الآتية:

When I was younger, I **could** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...In the past, I was **able to** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...e.g. - When I was younger, I **could draw**. - In the past, I was **able to paint**.

للتحدث عن القدرات في المضارع، من الممكن أن نستخدم أحد الصيغ الآتية:

These days, I **can** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...I'm **able to** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...e.g. - These days, I **can cycle**.- I'm **able to play** football.**Checkpoint** 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① My sister (**could** – **can** – **couldn't** – **can't**) sing songs. We are listening to her.
- ② I can (**plays** – **played** – **playing** – **play**) the piano.
- ③ Children (**can** – **can't** – **could** – **couldn't**) write stories now. They are creative.
- ④ She couldn't (**ride** – **riding** – **rode** – **rides**) a bike. It was hard.
- ⑤ Mona couldn't (**to call** – **call** – **calling** – **called**) us because she lost her phone.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① I (**could**) read a story now.
- ② He (**can't**) play the piano, when he was younger.
- ③ They can (**drawing**) a nice picture.
- ④ Salma (**can**) solve puzzles. It is hard.
- ⑤ She (**can**) sing when she was young.

Quick Practice on Expressing Ability

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 I (could) read when I was a baby.
- 2 She can (plays) the guitar very well now.
- 3 I can (to speak) English now.
- 4 When I was a baby, I (can) walk because I was too young.
- 5 She (can) ride a bike, but she's learning.
- 6 My grandfather could (swam) when he was young.
- 7 I (can't) find my book yesterday. It was lost.
- 8 They (could) come to the party because they were sick.
- 9 She can (sang) very well now.
- 10 We (couldn't) see the stars now. The sky is very cloudy.
- 11 My sister (can't) write when she was five, but now she can.
- 12 She (can) play the guitar because her hands hurt.
- 13 We (can) go to the park today. It's raining.
- 14 They can (played) football now.
- 15 When I was young, I (can) draw simple shapes only.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات بالترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 can't – go – We – today – outside.
.....
- 2 can't – Salma – bike – ride – a.
.....
- 3 Hazem – read – stories – can't – English.
.....
- 4 can – The – skate – children – the park – in.
.....
- 5 three – I – swim – when – I was – could.
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Two years ago, I finish a puzzle quickly, but now I can.
a) could b) can c) can't d) couldn't
- 2 They share their talents at the show today.
a) could b) are c) can d) couldn't
- 3 Working together in a group can teach us
a) homework b) artwork c) schoolwork d) teamwork
- 4 Ahmed is very; he plays football and swims every day.
a) young b) energetic c) sad d) tired
- 5 Hana doesn't like solving puzzles, she can only a few pieces.
a) run b) write c) place d) stay
- 6 My father draw when he was six years old.
a) could b) can c) can't d) is

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

could – journals – write – practiced – hobbies

When I was younger, I had many fun activities that I loved to do in my free time. My favorite (1)..... were drawing and singing. I (2)..... paint colorful pictures and perform songs for my family, but I couldn't (3)..... stories. My brother could write stories and (4).....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 Hamza (can) run when he was a child.
- 2 The baby (can) walk alone. He is only 6 months old.
- 3 We (couldn't) go out now; it's raining.
- 4 When I was five, I (can) swim a little.
- 5 I (can) draw nice pictures last year.
- 6 I can't (swimming) in deep water.
- 7 Amira (could) come to school because she was sick.
- 8 We (can't) visit our grandparents last week.

- 9 Seif (could) ride a bike now.
- 10 I couldn't (played) basketball when I was young.
- 11 She (could) play the piano. It was hard.
- 12 I (can) kick the ball. My legs hurt.
- 13 Youssef can drive a car now, but last year he (could).
- 14 I (could) write stories when I was one.
- 15 Hani can't (carried) the heavy bag.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 help – relax – Hobbies – us – and – have fun.

- 2 do – couldn't – these – They – activities.

- 3 Hassan – energetic – strong – is – and.

- 4 can – puzzles – I – finish – quickly.

- 5 active – me – healthy – keeps – and – Cycling.

Super Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 could you draw when you were young

- 2 many children can draw, paint, or write stories

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الموجودة بالأسفل:

"My hobby"

drawing – cycling – singing





Lesson 3

The Hobby Club



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

club	نادٍ	arrangement	ترتيب	friendship	صداقة
excitement	الإثارة	enjoyment	متعة	discussion	نقاش
agreement	موافقة	leadership	قيادة	creativity	إبداع

Extra vocabulary

students	طلاب	special (adj)	خاص - مميز
art room	غرفة الرسم	reading corner	ركن للقراءة
classmate	زميل الدراسة	quick (adj)	سريع
solution	حل		

Expressions and Phrases

side by side	جنبًا إلى جنب	caring for	الاعتناء بـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	its own day	يومها الخاص

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
decide	يقرر	decided		start	يبدأ	started	
join	يلتحق بـ / ينضم إلى	joined		organize	ينظم	organized	
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
grow	ينمو / يكبر	grew		teach	يعلم / يدرس	taught	
meet	يقابل	met		become	يصبح	became	

The School Hobby Club

نادى الهوايات المدرسي

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

At our school, a **group of**⁽¹⁾ students **decided**⁽²⁾ to start a Hobby Club. The **arrangement**⁽³⁾ was simple: each student would share a special talent.

(1)	مجموعة من
(2)	قرّر
(3)	ترتيب

✓ **Checkpoint** The arrangement was (**hard** – **bad** – **simple** – **difficult**): each student would share a special talent.

The middle

In the art room, Sara showed her beautiful **paintings**⁽⁴⁾. Her friendship with Maya grew stronger as they painted side by side. On the playground, Omar taught basketball skills, and his **excitement**⁽⁵⁾ made others want to **join**⁽⁶⁾. In the library, Laila organized a reading corner. Her love for reading made her classmates want to read more. Finally, Kareem started a small garden, teaching the **enjoyment**⁽⁷⁾ of caring for plants.

(4)	الرسومات
(5)	اثارة
(6)	يلتحق
(7)	المتعة

✓ **Checkpoint** Kareem began a small garden, teaching the enjoyment of caring for (**animals** – **children** – **books** – **plants**).

The end

At first, the problem was that everyone wanted to meet at the same time.

After a quick **discussion**⁽⁸⁾, they had an **agreement**⁽⁹⁾: each hobby would have its own day. The **solution**⁽¹⁰⁾ worked, and soon the Hobby Club **became**⁽¹¹⁾ a place of **leadership**⁽¹²⁾, creativity, and fun.

(8)	نقاش
(9)	موافقة
(10)	حل
(11)	اصبح
(12)	قيادة

✓ **Checkpoint** The Hobby Club is a (**time** – **place** – **food** – **people**) of leadership.

في مدرستنا، قررت مجموعة من الطلاب إنشاء نادي للهوايات. كان الترتيب بسيطاً: كل طالب يشارك بموهبة مميزة. في غرفة الرسم، عرضت سارة لوحاتها الجميلة. واصبحت صداقتها مع مايا أقوى عندما رسما جنباً إلى جنب. في الملعب، علّم عمر مهارات كرة السلة، وحماسه دفع الآخرين للانضمام. في المكتبة، نظّمت ليلى ركنًا للقراءة. جها للقراءة دفع زملاءها إلى أن يقرأوا أكثر. وأخيراً، أنشأ كريم حديقة صغيرة، يُعلّمهم متعة الاعتناء بالنباتات. في البداية، كانت المشكلة أن الجميع أرادوا الاجتماع في نفس الوقت. بعد نقاش سريع، اتفقوا على أن يكون لكل هواية يومها الخاص. نجح الحل، وسرعان ما أصبح نادي الهوايات مكانًا للقيادة والإبداع والمرح.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ A group of students at the school decided to start a Hobby Club.
- قررت مجموعة من الطلاب في المدرسة إنشاء نادٍ للهوايات.
- ✓ The students arranged for each student to share a special talent.
- رتب الطلاب على أن يشارك كل واحد منهم موهبة مميزة.
- ✓ Sara showed her beautiful paintings, and her friendship with Maya grew stronger.
- عرضت سارة لوحاتها الجميلة، وازدادت صداقتها بمايا قوة.
- ✓ Omar taught basketball skills and his excitement made others want to join.
- قام عمر بتعليم مهارات كرة السلة، وجعل حماسه الآخرين يريدون الانضمام.
- ✓ Laila organized a reading corner in the library, which made her classmates want to read more.
- نظمت ليلي ركنًا للقراءة في المكتبة، مما جعل زميلاتها يريدون القراءة أكثر.
- ✓ Kareem started a small garden to teach the enjoyment of caring for plants.
- قام كريم بتأسيس حديقة صغيرة ليعلم الأطفال أهمية الاعتناء بالنباتات.
- ✓ The students agreed that each hobby would have its own day.
- اتفق الطلاب على أن يكون لكل هواية يومها الخاص.
- ✓ The Hobby Club became a place of leadership, creativity, and fun.
- أصبح نادى الهوايات مكانًا للقيادة والإبداع والمتعة.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Write (T) true or (F) false: SB

- ① Kareem started a small garden. ()
- ② Laila's hobby was painting. ()
- ③ Omar taught basketball skills. ()
- ④ The students solved their problem with an agreement. ()

2. Answer the following questions:

- ① Who taught basketball skills in the Hobby Club?

.....

- ② How did the students solve their problem?

.....

Word Building Skills



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

A **suffix** is a group of letters added to the end of a word to change its meaning or make a new word.

اللاحقة: هي مجموعة من الحروف تُضاف إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

Suffix -ment

enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyment	المتعة
excite	يثار	excitement	الإثارة
move	يتحرك	movement	الحركة

Rule for Pronunciation of -ment

Stress stays on the main word, not on -ment.

التشديد يكون على الكلمة الأساسية، وليس على -ment.

Suffix -ship

friend	صديق	friendship	الصداقة
leader	قائد	leadership	القيادة
member	فرد	membership	العضوية

Rule for Pronunciation of -ship

Stress stays on the main word, not on -ship.

التشديد يكون على الكلمة الأساسية، وليس على -ship.



Checkpoint

Circle the words that have the suffix -ship or -ment:



enjoyment	book	friendship	play	step
movement	cat	leadership	garden	painting
membership	excitement	agreement	argument	hobby



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 I like spending time with my at school.
a) classmates b) uncles c) pets d) parents
- 2 We draw and paint in the
a) art room b) reading corner c) science lab d) library
- 3 Our school has a fun for students who have different hobbies.
a) reading corner b) hobby club
c) science lab d) playground
- 4 The teacher made a/an for the school trip next week.
a) friendship b) hobby
c) library d) arrangement
- 5 Reading every day helps students improve their
a) holidays b) toys
c) skills d) food
- 6 The library has a nice for students who love books.
a) living room b) art wall
c) science room d) reading corner
- 7 Joining an art club helps students show their
a) creativity b) caring c) friendship d) arrangement

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

talents – plant – sing – arrangement – excitement

Our teacher, Mr. Khaled decided to start a Hobby Club for all students. The (1) was simple: each student would share a special talent. Kareem taught others how to (2) seeds in small pots. His (3) made others want to join. By the end of the day, everyone learned that sharing (4) builds friendship and fun.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

At our school, the students had a short discussion about organizing a Sports Day in the school playground. The arrangement was simple: each student would teach or play a sport they liked. Omar showed basketball tricks. His excitement made others want to join. Lina taught volleyball skills. There was a lot of enjoyment as friends learned new skills and worked together as a team.



Steps to Start a Hobby



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

gardening	أعمال البستنة والتشجير	first	أولاً
next	التالي	then	ثم
after that	بعد ذلك	finally	أخيراً

Extra vocabulary

truly	حقاً	instrument	آلة موسيقية	keyboard	أرج صغير
perfect	ممتاز / مثالي	immediately	في الحال	progress	تقدم
soil	تربة زراعية	seed	بذرة	pot	إناء / أصيص زرع
steps	خطوات	nature	طبيعة	interests	اهتمامات
survey	استبيان/استطلاع رأي	opinions	آراء	experiences	خبرات / تجارب حياتية

Expressions and Phrases

step by step	خطوة بخطوة	It's time to	لقد حان الوقت لـ
--------------	------------	--------------	------------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
try	tried	follow	followed
match	matched	achieve	achieved

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
build	built	begin	began
think	thought	make	made



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

If you wanted to start a new hobby, what would you do first?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Do you want to **try**⁽¹⁾ something exciting and new? Starting a great hobby is **easy**⁽²⁾! It brings you enjoyment and helps build strong friendships with others. **Follow**⁽³⁾ these four simple steps:

First⁽⁴⁾, take a moment to think about what you **truly**⁽⁵⁾ love. What makes you happy in your free time? Do you like music, art, nature, or movement?

Choose a hobby that matches your **interests**⁽⁶⁾, like drawing, reading, or cycling.

Next⁽⁷⁾, it's time to get the things you need to begin. If you decide on music, you might need an **instrument**⁽⁸⁾ like a small keyboard or guitar. If you choose gardening, you will need seeds, soil, and a small pot.

Then⁽⁹⁾, start practicing your new hobby! Don't try to be perfect **immediately**⁽¹⁰⁾; learning takes time. Play simple songs at first, or plant a small seed in a single pot.

After that⁽¹¹⁾, practice your hobby step by step to see your amazing **progress**⁽¹²⁾.

Finally⁽¹³⁾, enjoy what you have achieved! Show your music to your family, or share a picture of your growing plant with a friend. Hobbies make life exciting and fun, and sharing your excitement makes it even better!

(1)	يجرب
(2)	سهل
(3)	تتبع
(4)	أولاً
(5)	حقاً
(6)	اهتمامات
(7)	التالي
(8)	آلة موسيقية
(9)	ثم
(10)	في الحال
(11)	بعد ذلك
(12)	تقدم
(13)	في النهاية

هل ترغب بتجربة شيء جديد ومثير؟ بدء هواية رائعة أمر سهل! فهي تجلب لك المتعة وتساعدك على بناء صداقات قوية مع الآخرين. اتبع هذه الخطوات الأربع البسيطة: أولاً، خصص لحظة للتفكير فيما تحبه حقاً. ما الذي يسعدك في وقت فراغك؟ هل تحب الموسيقى، أم الفن، أم الطبيعة، أم الحركة؟ اختر هواية تناسب اهتماماتك، مثل الرسم، أو القراءة، أو ركوب الدراجات. ثم، لقد حان الوقت لتجهيز ما تحتاجه للبدء. إذا اخترت الموسيقى، فربما تحتاج إلى آلة موسيقية صغيرة مثل أورج صغير أو جيتار. إذا اخترت الزراعة، فستحتاج إلى بذور وتربة وأصيص زرع صغير. ثم ابدأ بممارسة هوايتك الجديدة! لا تحاول أن تصبح مثاليًا فوراً! فالتعلم يستغرق وقتاً. شغل أغاني بسيطة في البداية، أو ازرع بذرة صغيرة في أصيص واحد. بعد ذلك، مارس هوايتك خطوة بخطوة لتشاهد تقدمك المذهل. وأخيراً، استمتع بما حققته! أظهر موسيقاك لعائلتك، أو شارك صورة لنباتك وهي تنمو مع صديق. الهوايات تجعل الحياة مثيرة وممتعة، ومشاركة حماسك يجعلها أفضل!



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Starting a hobby is easy and fun. - الهواية الجديدة سهلة وممتعة.
- ✓ First, think about what you love before choosing your hobby. - أولاً، فكر في الأشياء التي تحبها قبل أن تختار هوايتك.
- ✓ Next, get the tools or things you need for your hobby. - ثم، احصل على الأدوات أو الأشياء التي تحتاجها لبدء هوايتك.
- ✓ Then, practice your hobby step by step and don't rush to be perfect. - ثم، تدرب على هوايتك خطوة بخطوة ولا تتعجل أن تكون مثاليًا.
- ✓ Finally, enjoy your hobby and share it with others. - أخيرًا، استمتع بهوايتك وشاركها مع الآخرين.

Remember

Sequencing words help us show the **order of steps or events** in a text. They tell the reader what happens first, what comes next, and what happens at the end.

يساعدنا ترتيب الكلمات على إظهار تسلسل الخطوات أو الأحداث في النص. فهي تُخبر القارئ بما يحدث أولاً، وما يليه، وما يحدث في النهاية.

First, → use it for the beginning step.	أولاً، ← استخدمه للخطوة الأولى.
Next, → use it for the second step.	التالي، ← استخدمه للخطوة الثانية.
Then, → use it for the mid steps.	ثم، ← استخدمه للخطوات الوسطى.
After that → use it for more mid steps.	بعد ذلك ← استخدمه لمزيد من الخطوات الوسطى.
Finally, → use it for the last step.	وأخيرًا، ← استخدمه للخطوة الأخيرة.



Write 30–40 words about how you started your favorite hobby: SB

Instructions:

1. اختر عنوانًا.
2. Choose a hobby you like (example: drawing, football, reading, cycling). اختر هواية تُحبها (مثال: الرسم، كرة القدم، القراءة، ركوب الدراجات).
3. Think about the steps you take to start this hobby. فكّر في الخطوات التي ستتبعها لبدء هذه الهواية.
4. Use sequencing words to show the order (first, then, etc.). استخدم كلمات مُتسلسلة لإظهار الترتيب (أولاً، ثم، إلخ).

.....

.....

.....

.....

Think and create a survey



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

A survey is a group of questions that people answer to share their ideas, opinions, or experiences.

الاستبيان هو مجموعة من الأسئلة التي يجيب عنها الأشخاص لمشاركة أفكارهم أو آرائهم أو تجاربهم.

It's time to do a fun survey about your hobbies. This will help you learn more about each other and maybe even find friends who like the same things as you do!

حان الوقت لإجراء استطلاع رأي ممتع حول هواياتكم. سيساعدكم هذا على التعرف على بعضكم البعض أكثر، وربما حتى العثور على أصدقاء يشاركونكم نفس اهتماماتكم!

Follow the instructions to do the survey:

- Read each question carefully.

اقرأ كل سؤال بعناية

- Put a ✓ next to your choices in the checkboxes.

ضع ✓ بجانب اختيارك في مربعات الاختيارات.

- If the question asks you to circle a number, circle the one that shows how much you enjoy it.

إذا طلب منك السؤال تحديد رقم، فحدد الرقم الذي يوضح مدى استمتاعك به.

- If you see a blank line, write your own answer.

إذا رأيت سطرًا فارغًا، فاكتب إجابتك الخاصة.

My Hobbies Survey

SB

1 Which of these hobbies do you enjoy the most? (Check all that you like)

- ☐ Reading stories or comics
- ☐ Playing sports (football, basketball, swimming, etc.)
- ☐ Drawing or painting

2 How often do you spend time on your favorite hobby?

- ☐ Every day
- ☐ A few times a week during holidays

3 Which hobby would you like to learn or try in the future?

.....

.....

4 Check all that you like about your hobby.

- ☐ It helps me relax.
- ☐ It makes me happy.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Playing football gives me a lot of
a) sadness b) enjoyment c) arrangement d) membership
- 2 Choose a hobby that your interests.
a) starts b) tries c) matches d) thinks
- 3 A piano is a musical
a) drawing b) instrument c) computer d) picture
- 4 My mother enjoys and planting flowers.
a) painting b) driving c) gardening d) washing
- 5 If you are using a keyboard to make music, you are
a) singing b) playing the piano
c) cycling d) skating
- 6 A/An is a group of questions that people answer to share their ideas, or experiences. Super Question ?
a) step b) survey c) opinion d) hobby

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

pot – water – seeds – warm – hobby

Gardening is one of my favorite hobbies. I love spending time planting (1), feeling the fresh air and (2) sunshine. I plant flowers in a (3) and take care of them every day. I prepare the soil, (4) the plants, and watch them grow beautifully.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Malek wanted to start a new hobby, so he decided to try painting. He bought some colors, brushes, and drawing paper. At first, his work wasn't perfect, but he practiced step by step every day. Malek loved using his creativity to draw nature and people. His family was proud of his progress. Painting made Malek feel calm and happy. He learned that starting a new hobby needs patience and time, but it's a fun way to express yourself and learn new skills.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Malek bought colors, brushes, and
a) toys b) food c) paper d) clothes
- 2 Malek learned that a new hobby needs
a) sleep b) speed c) luck d) patience

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What new hobby did Malek start?
.....
- 4 Who was proud of Malek's progress?
.....
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 your – step – hobby – Practice – step – by.
.....
- 2 fun – Hobbies – exciting – life – and – make.
.....
- 3 like – you – or – nature – Do – music?
.....
- 4 makes – happy – in your free time – What – you?
.....
- 5 to – your family – Show – music – your.
.....
- 6 to – Do – you – something – want – try – new?
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 you will need seeds soil, and a small pot.
.....
- 2 could you buy the books yesterday
.....

Unit 1

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

playing board games	لعب ألعاب الطاولة	skating	التزلج
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	painting	الرسم باستخدام الألوان
singing	الغناء	solving puzzles	حل الألغاز
playing the piano	عزف البيانو	crafting with paper	الأشغال اليدوية بالورق
Talent Show	عرض المواهب	hobby	هواية
drawing	رسم	journals	يوميات

Lesson (2)

activities	أنشطة	free time	وقت الفراغ
schoolwork	واجبات مدرسية	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
patience	الصبر	energetic	نشط
important	هام	creativity	إبداع
pieces	قطع	outside	في الخارج / خارج
simple	بسيط	skills	مهارات
problem-solving	حل المشكلات	smarter	أذكى

Lesson (3)

club	نادٍ	arrangement	ترتيب
friendship	الصداقة	side by side	جنبًا إلى جنب
enjoyment	متعة	excitement	الإثارة
discussion	نقاش	art room	غرفة الرسم
agreement	موافقة	leadership	قيادة

Lessons (4 and 5)

gardening	أعمال البستنة والتشجير	nature	الطبيعة
first	أولًا	next	التالي
then	ثم	after that	بعد ذلك
finally	أخيرًا	steps	خطوات
soil	تربة زراعية	seed	بذرة
pot	إناء/أصيص زرع	instrument	آله موسيقية

Language in Use

• To express ability in the present:

للتعبير عن القدرة في الحاضر:

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (فاعل) + **can** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. She **can** play the piano.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (فاعل) + **cannot (can't)** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. They **can't** skate.

• To express ability in past:

للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (فاعل) + **could** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. I **could** read stories when I was six.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (فاعل) + **could not (couldn't)** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. She **couldn't** draw when she was younger.

Unit 1

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في الإجابة عن اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالإنجليزية	الكلمة بالعربية
التزلج	playing board games
ارسم باستخدام الألوان	cycling
حل الألغاز	singing
الأشغال اليدوية بالورق	playing the piano
يوميات	drawing

Lesson 2

وقت فراغ	activities
بالخارج	schoolwork
اذكى	energetic
إبداع	patience
مهارات	pieces

Lesson 3

نقاش	arrangement
قيادة	friendship
الإثارة	agreement
غرفة الرسم	club
مكتبة	students

Lessons 4 and 5

الطبيعة	steps
أعمال البستنة والتشجير	first
آراء	then
خبرات / تجارب حياتية	finally
ممتاز / مثالي	instrument

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present

share

bring

choose

begin

Past

finished

Present

relax

write

achieve

Past

performed

spent

”لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“.



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "Your favorite hobby":

- o My favorite hobby is اسم هوايتك.
- o I enjoy it because it helps me + اذكر لم تحبها.
- o I use + اذكر ما تستخدمه في هذه الهواية.
- o It makes me + اذكر ما شعورك عند ممارستها.

"My favorite hobby"

My favorite hobby is painting. I enjoy it because it helps me relax and be creative. I use colors and brushes to make beautiful pictures. Painting makes me happy and proud of my work. Hobbies make us smarter, stronger, and happier.

How to write about "Steps to start a hobby"

- o Hobbies are important because + اذكر أهمية الهوايات .
- o First, think about what you enjoy doing most.
- o Then, get the things or tools you need for your hobby.
- o Next, practice your hobby step by step to get better.
- o Finally, enjoy your hobby and share it with others.

"Steps to start a hobby"

Hobbies help us relax and learn new things about life. First, think about what you really enjoy. Then, get the tools you need and start practicing step by step. Finally, keep trying and enjoy your hobby with your friends and family.

تدريبات إضافية مأخوذة من كتاب الوزارة. 📌

1 Match the word with its meaning. Put the correct number in the box:

صل الكلمة بمعناها. ضع الرقم الصحيح في المربع:

word	meaning
1 talent	a game where you join pieces together
2 crafting	using your voice for music
3 cycling	a natural skill
4 singing	making something with your hands
5 solving puzzles	riding a bicycle

2 Complete the sentences with "can", "can't", "could", "couldn't":

أكمل الجمل بـ "can"، "can't"، "could"، "couldn't":

- I play the piano now, but last year I
- She swim when she was five, but now she swim well.
- They ride their bikes today, but when they were young, they balance.
- We play board games together yesterday because we had no time.
- He sing very well now, but when he was younger, he

3 Add the suitable suffix to each word:

أضف اللاحقة المناسبة لكل كلمة:

- excite →
- leader →
- move →
- friend →
- enjoy →



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Omar performed a song for the club. (.....)
- 2 Adam could not play the piano well in the past. (.....)
- 3 The students agreed that hobbies do not help them relax. (.....)
- 4 The club will meet every week. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

- 1 The music teacher helps us practice before the concert.
a) playing the piano b) running c) painting d) drawing
- 2 My dad couldn't yesterday.
a) sleeping b) sleeps c) slept d) sleep
- 3 Hind go to the party because she doesn't have a dress.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 4 My sister is very good at She likes drawing pictures.
a) reading b) singing c) painting d) cycling

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

patience – outside – practiced – painting – creativity

In my free time, I like to do activities that help me relax and feel happy. Sometimes, I go (1) to play and stay energetic. I also enjoy drawing and (2) because they show my (3) Some hobbies teach me (4) and help me have fun and learn new things.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Spending time outside is fun and healthy. There are many activities we can do outdoors, like cycling, running, or playing football with friends. Some people enjoy walking in the park or having a picnic with their families. Others love gardening, where they plant flowers and care for nature. Outside activities help us stay energetic, relaxed, and happy. They also teach teamwork and patience. Breathing fresh air and feeling the sunshine make us strong and positive. Enjoying time outside is a great way to live a healthy life.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- People can do many outside.
a) lessons b) activities c) exams d) arrangements
- The underlined word "cycling" means
a) sleeping b) walking outside c) shouting d) riding a bike

B Answer the following questions:

- What activities can we do outdoors?
- How do outside activities make people feel?
- Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

4

- We (could) visit the museum yesterday; it was closed.
- He can (spoke) three languages.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

2

- last – couldn't – They – football – year – play.
.....
- hobbies – Where – perform – do – your – you?
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- my little sister can read short stories now
.....
- how did the students solve their problem
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الموجودة بالأسفل:

7

"How to start a new hobby"

First – Next – Finally



.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (T) صحيح أو (F) خطأ:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Adam's hobby is playing board games. (.....)
- 2 He enjoys solving puzzles with his family. (.....)
- 3 Adam could finish puzzles quickly when he was younger. (.....)
- 4 Nour sometimes writes stories in her journals. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2

- 1 My brother likes in the park, but he wears a helmet for safety.
a) crafting b) singing c) cycling d) painting
- 2 Hobbies can bring us
a) enjoyment b) agreement c) movement d) membership
- 3 He is strong, but he carry this bag.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 4 We buy bread because the bakery was closed.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

2

performing – grows – opinions – fun – achieved

In our Hobby Club, we talk about our progress every week. Each member shares what they have (1) and how they improved their skills. We also share our (2) about new hobbies and (3) activities. It's exciting to see how everyone (4) and learns something new each week.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

To start a new hobby, first, think about what you enjoy doing in your free time. Next, choose a hobby that matches your interests, like drawing or reading. Then, collect the things you need for your hobby, such as books, paints, or seeds. After that, practice your hobby step by step and try to get better each time. Finally, share your hobby with your family or friends and enjoy your progress.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) starting a new sport b) starting a new song
c) starting a new book d) starting a new hobby
- 2 The underlined word "progress" means getting
a) worse b) better c) poor d) taller

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How can you choose your hobby?
- 4 Why is it important to practice your hobby step by step?
- 5 Who can you share your hobby with?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

4

- 1 Maya (can) come to the park today because she's sick.
- 2 They (can't) visit their friends because it rained.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

2

- 1 playing – enjoy – games – board – We – together.

- 2 What – enjoy – do – hobbies – friends – your?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

- 1 our discussion helped us understand the topic better.....
- 2 who taught basketball skills in the Hobby Club

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

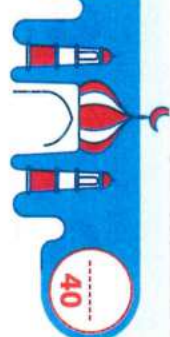
اكتب فقرة من أربعين (40) كلمة مستخدماً الكلمات الموجودة بالأسفل:

7

"A Hobby Club at our School"

reading – creative – leadership





A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واكتب الإجابة الصحيحة:

(الإجابة راجع نص الاجتماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Laila organized a (painting – reading – music) corner at school.
- 2 Her love for books made her classmates want to (write – sleep – read) more.
- 3 The Hobby Club became a place full of (noise – problems – creativity and fun).

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل الحوار:

free time – join – hobby – drawing

Omar : What's your favorite (1), Salma?

Salma : I love (2)

Omar : That's great! I like to do it in my (3)

Salma : Let's (4) the Hobby Club together!

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Playing board games helps us learn (patience – singing – gardening).
- 2 I (can – can't – couldn't) ride a bike when I was five.
- 3 We can (join – have – stay) the Hobby Club at school.
- 4 You (couldn't – could – can) help your friends in the talent show now.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الخطأ الموجودة تحته خط:

- 1 I can go skating when I was six. (.....)
- 2 We can't have fun when we play. It's exciting. (.....)
- 3 We can go to the park yesterday because it was sunny. (.....)
- 4 My brother could reading stories when he was five. (.....)

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

اقرأ الفقرة التالية، ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Many children love to spend time doing their hobbies. Karim enjoys cycling in the park with his friends. His sister, Salma, likes painting and keeps her work in her art journal. On weekends, the family plays board games together and sometimes goes skating outside. Their parents say hobbies help them relax and become more creative. Hobbies also teach children to work with others and have fun.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 Their parents say hobbies make them tired and bored. (.....)
- 2 Hobbies help children work with others and have fun. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Karim enjoys (painting – cycling – singing) in the park with his friends.
- 4 Salma keeps her paintings in her (notebook – kitchen – art journal).
- 5 The family plays (board games – football – video games) together on weekends.

E. Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences:

اكتب فقرة قصيرة مكونة من أربع جمل:

"My Hobbies"

board games – cycling – singing – drawing

.....

.....

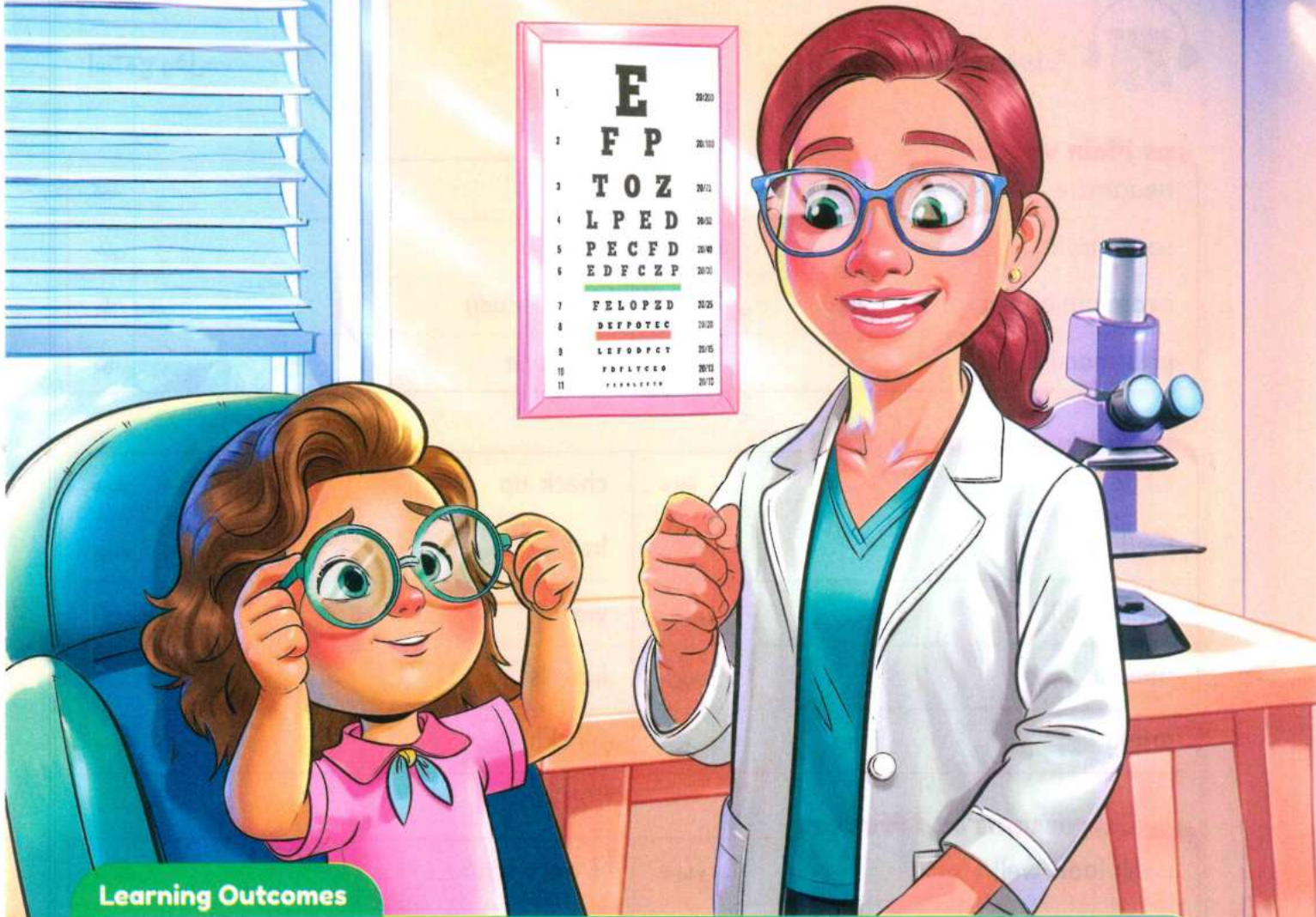
.....

Unit

2

At the Doctor's

في عيادة الطبيب



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- identify key information and main ideas from a dialog about a visit to a doctor's clinic.

- يحدد المعلومات الأساسية والأفكار الرئيسية من حوار عن زيارة إلى عيادة الطبيب.

- recall specific details and advice given in a conversation.

- يتذكر تفاصيل محددة ونصائح قُدمت في محادثة.

- recognize and recall vocabulary related to illnesses and the clinic.

- يتعرف على المفردات المتعلقة بالأمراض والعيادة ويتذكرها.

Speaking:

- express his/her opinion and thought on health-related topics.
- tell a personal experience or a story related to feeling sick.
- present health tips they have created to their classmates.

- يعبر عن آرائه وأفكاره حول مواضيع متعلقة بالصحة.

- يسرد تجربة شخصية أو قصة تتعلق بالشعور بالمرض.

- يُقدم نصائح صحية قام بإعدادها لزملائه في الصف.

Reading:

- understand informational texts.
- extract specific information from a text to answer questions.
- follow written instructions and advice found in a text, such as health rules.

- يفهم النصوص المعلوماتية.

- يستخرج معلومات محددة من النص للإجابة عن الأسئلة.

- يتبع التعليمات المكتوبة والنصائح الموجودة في النص، مثل قواعد الصحة.

Writing:

- use "have to, don't have to, must, mustn't" to give advice or talk about obligations.

- يستخدم "have to, don't have to, must, mustn't" لإعطاء نصائح أو التحدث عن الالتزامات.

- write a short email including a subject line, greeting, and a brief message.

- يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا قصيرًا يتضمن عنوانًا، وتحية، ورسالة مختصرة.

- create short, clear health tips for a bookmark.

- يُنشئ نصائح صحية قصيرة وواضحة لوضعها على إشارات مرجعية.



Lesson 1 A Day at the Clinic



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

headache	صداع	cough	كحة
sore throat	ألم بالحلق	fever	حمى
examination room	غرفة الفحص	serious (adj)	جاد/ خطير
pharmacy	صيدلية	medicine	دواء

Extra vocabulary

clinic	عيادة	check up	فحص
tired (adj)	متعب	body	جسم
weak (adj)	ضعيف	warm	دافئ
patient	مريض	liquids	سوائل
today	اليوم	quickly	بسرعة

Expressions and Phrases

don't look well	لا يبدو جيدًا	What's wrong?	ما الأمر؟
Let's + (inf.)	هيا	feel better	يتحسن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
rest يستريح	rested	hope يأمل	hoped
Present	Past	Present	Past
feel يشعر	felt	hurt يؤلم	hurt
come يأتي	came	know يعرف	knew
take care يعتني	took care	get يحصل	got

Fady's Check-Up

فحص فادي الطبي



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Fady

Ah... I feel so tired. My body hurts.

آه... أشعر بتعب شديد. جسمي يؤلمني.

You don't look well, Fady. What's wrong?

أنت لا تبدو بخير يا فادي. ما الأمر؟



Mother



Fady

I have a headache and a cough. I also have a sore throat and a fever.

لدي صداع وكحة. وأيضًا لدى التهاب في الحلق وحمى.

Oh no! We have to go to the doctor.

أوه لا! علينا الذهاب إلى الطبيب.



Mother

(At the clinic) في العيادة



Nurse

Hello, Fady. Please come to the examination room.

مرحبًا يا فادي. تفضل بالدخول إلى غرفة الفحص.

Well, Fady, how are you feeling today?

حسنًا، فادي، ماذا تشعر اليوم؟



Doctor



Fady

Not good, Doctor. I have a headache and a cough.

لست بخير يا دكتور. لدى صداع وكحة.

You look a little weak, but it's not serious. You must rest and drink warm liquids. No ice cream for three days.

تبدو ضعيفًا قليلًا، لكنه ليس خطيرًا. يجب أن ترتاح وتشرب السوائل الدافئة. لا آيس كريم لمدة ثلاثة أيام.



Doctor



Fady

Oh no! But I love ice cream!

أوه لا! لكني أحب الآيس كريم!

I know, but you have to take care of yourself. You'll feel better soon.

أعلم، لكن عليك الاعتناء بنفسك. ستشعر بتحسن قريبًا.



Doctor



Mother

Thank you, Doctor. Now, Fady, let's go to the pharmacy to get your medicine.

شكرًا لك يا دكتور. الآن يا فادي، دعنا نذهب إلى الصيدلية للحصول على دوائك.

I hope I feel better quickly. I must take my medicine and rest.

أمل أن أشعر بتحسن سريعًا. يجب أن أتناول دوائي وأستريح.



Fady

**Tip!**

– We use have/has to talk about how we feel when we are sick.

نستخدم have أو has للتحدث عن شعورنا عندما نكون مرضى.

Remember

I/You/We/They → have

He/She/It → has



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Fady feels very tired and his body hurts. - فادي يشعر بتعب شديد وجسمه يؤلمه.
- ✓ Fady has a headache, cough, sore throat, and fever. - فادي لديه صداع، كحة، ألم بالحلق وحمى.
- ✓ His mother decides they need to see a doctor. - قررت والدته أنه يجب عليهم زيارة الطبيب.
- ✓ At the clinic, the nurse calls Fady to the examination room. - في العيادة، استدعت الممرضة فادي إلى غرفة الفحص.
- ✓ The doctor examines Fady and finds he is weak, but it's not serious. - فحص الطبيب فادي ووجد أنه ضعيف لكن الأمر ليس خطيرا.
- ✓ The doctor advises Fady to rest, drink warm liquids, and avoid ice cream for three days. - نصح الطبيب فادي بالراحة، وشرب السوائل الدافئة، وتجنب الآيس كريم لمدة ثلاثة أيام.
- ✓ Fady must take his medicine and rest. - يجب على فادي تناول دوائه ويستريح.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① I have a (car – book – headache – drink). I need to see a doctor.
- ② The doctor works at a (clinic – park – school – factory).
- ③ Doctors examine the patients in the (living room – waiting room – examination room – garden).
- ④ I must take my medicine and (play – study – rest – hurt).
- ⑤ We get the medicine from the (shop – club – pharmacy – school).

2. Read again and answer: SB

- ① Why did Fady's mother take him to the clinic?
.....
- ② What advice did the doctor give Fady?
.....
- ③ Where did Fady and his mother go after seeing the doctor?
.....



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Fady went to the clinic because he had a sore throat and a bad cough. (.....)
- 2 The doctor said that Fady's illness was very serious. (.....)
- 3 Fady went to the pharmacy to get his medicine. (.....)
- 4 Now Fady feels much better, but sometimes his head hurts a little. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I feel so My body hurts.
a) happy b) excited c) tired d) proud
- 2 A helps the doctor and cares for sick people.
a) teacher b) nurse c) driver d) cook
- 3 If your head hurts, you have a
a) headache b) stomachache c) cough d) fever
- 4 The doctor said, "It's not; don't worry."
a) happy b) serious c) easy d) clean
- 5 When you have a, you should cover your mouth.
a) cough b) fever c) headache d) sore throat
- 6 You should take your when you are sick. Super Question ?
a) notebook b) medicine c) pen d) homework

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rested – clinic – school – medicine – cough

Fady woke up early in the morning, but he didn't feel well. He had a bad (1) and felt very tired. His mother took him to the (2) to see the doctor. The doctor was kind and gave him some (3) to help him get better. After that, they went home and Fady (4) for the whole day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Yesterday, Ahmed went to the clinic because he had a **sore throat** and a bad cough. The nurse took him to the examination room where the doctor checked his temperature. The doctor said, "You have a fever, but it's not serious." He gave Ahmed some medicine and told him to rest at home. After two days, Ahmed felt much better and went back to school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 If someone has a "**sore throat**" it means
 - a) their head hurts
 - b) their throat hurts
 - c) they can sing
 - d) they have a headache
- 2 The doctor said the illness was
 - a) serious
 - b) dangerous
 - c) not serious
 - d) strange

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who helped Ahmed at the clinic?
.....
- 4 What did the doctor tell Ahmed to do?
.....
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 a cough – **I** – and – headache – a – have.
.....
- 2 are – today – **How** – you – feeling?
.....
- 3 the medicine – pharmacy – **Let's** – to get – the – go to.
.....
- 4 must – rest – drink – **You** – and – warm – liquids. Super Question ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 i went to the clinic yesterday
.....
- 2 where is the examination room
.....



Lesson 2

Staying Healthy at school



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

first aid kit	عدة الإسعافات الأولية	bandages	ضمادات
plasters	لاصقات طبية	cuts	جروح
bruises	كدمات	injured (adj)	مصاب

Extra vocabulary

nurse	ممرضة	accidents	حوادث	scissors	مقص
student	طالب	inside	بداخل	without	بدون
permission	إذن/ تصريح	because	لأن	dangerous (adj)	خطير
full (adj)	كامل	safe (adj)	آمن	careful (adj)	حريص

Expressions and Phrases

get hurt	يصاب	right away	فورًا/ حالًا
make sure	يتأكد	don't have to worry	لا داعٍ للقلق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
call	called	stay	stayed
Present	Past	Present	Past
tell	told	know	knew

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
tell	told	know	knew

Definitions

clinic	means the place where students go when they feel sick at school المكان الذي يذهب إليه الطلاب عندما يشعرون بالمرض في المدرسة
nurse	means the person who gives you medicine at school الشخص الذي يعطيك الدواء في المدرسة
injured	means you are hurt or sick تعنى انك مصاب او مريض.
first aid kit	means the box in the nurse's room that has everything needed for small accidents الصندوق الموجود في غرفة الممرضة الذي يحتوى على كل ما يلزم للحوادث الصغيرة

The First Aid Kit at School عدة الإسعافات الأولية في المدرسة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What should you do if you feel sick at school?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

At our school, there's a big first aid kit in the nurse's room.

It has everything we might need for small accidents⁽¹⁾.

Inside, there are bandages⁽²⁾, plasters⁽³⁾, scissors, and medicine for cuts⁽⁴⁾ and bruises⁽⁵⁾.

If a student gets hurt, the nurse has to check the first

aid kit and help them right away. Students must tell

a teacher or the nurse when someone is injured⁽⁶⁾.

We mustn't open the first aid kit without permission⁽⁷⁾

because some things inside can be dangerous⁽⁸⁾.

Nurses must make sure⁽⁹⁾ the kit is always clean, ready,

and full⁽¹⁰⁾. They also must call parents if a student feels

too sick. Students don't have to worry, because the nurse

always knows how to help.

The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe⁽¹¹⁾ at school—but

we must all remember to be careful and play safely so we

don't get hurt!



(1)	حوادث
(2)	ضمادات
(3)	لاصقات طبية
(4)	جروح
(5)	كدمات
(6)	مصاب
(7)	إذن / تصريح
(8)	خطير
(9)	يتأكد
(10)	كامل
(11)	يبقى آمناً

في مدرستنا توجد حقيبة إسعافات أولية كبيرة في غرفة الممرضة، تحتوي على كل ما قد نحتاجه للحوادث البسيطة، بداخلها ضمادات ولاصقات طبية ومقصات وأدوية للجروح والكدمات، إذا أصيب أحد الطلاب، يجب على الممرضة أن تفحص حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية وتساعدته فوراً. يجب على الطلاب إخبار المعلم أو الممرضة عندما يُصاب أحد، ولا يجب علينا فتح حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية دون إذن، لأن بعض الأشياء بداخلها قد تكون خطيرة. يجب على الممرضات التأكد من أن حقيبة الإسعافات نظيفة دائماً، وجاهزة، وممتلئة، كما يجب عليهن الاتصال بالوالدين إذا شعر أحد الطلاب بالمرض الشديد، لا يحتاج الطلاب إلى القلق، لأن الممرضة تعرف دائماً كيف تساعد.

تساعد حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية الجميع على البقاء بأمان في المدرسة - ولكن يجب علينا جميعاً أن نتذكر أن نكون حذرين ونلعب بأمان حتى لا نُؤذي أنفسنا!



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ At our school, there's a big first aid kit in the nurse's room.
- في مدرستنا حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية الكبيرة في غرفة الممرضة.
- ✓ It contains bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises.
- تحتوي على ضمادات ولصقات طبية ومقصات وأدوية للجروح والكدمات.
- ✓ If a student is injured, the nurse checks the kit and helps right away.
- إذا أصيب أحد الطلاب، تقوم الممرضة بفحص الحقيبة وتقديم المساعدة فورًا.
- ✓ Students mustn't open the first aid kit without permission because some items can be dangerous.
- يجب على الطلاب عدم فتح حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية دون إذن، لأن بعض الأدوات بداخلها قد تكون خطيرة.
- ✓ Nurses must keep the kit clean, ready, and full, and they must call parents if a student feels too sick.
- يجب على الممرضات إبقاء الحقيبة نظيفة، وجاهزة، وممتلئة دائمًا، كما يجب عليهن الاتصال بأولياء الأمور إذا شعر الطالب بمرض شديد.
- ✓ The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe, but students should still be careful and play safely to avoid getting hurt.
- تساعد حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية الجميع على البقاء في أمان، ولكن على الطلاب أن يكونوا حذرين ويلعبوا بأمان لتجنب الإصابات.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① It's (fun – dangerous – polite – clean) to run in the classroom.
- ② Rania was (fine – sleepy – relaxed – injured) after she fell off her bike.
- ③ Always be (noisy – careful – lazy – tall) when you use sharp things.
- ④ The first aid kit helps everyone stay (tired – quiet – ready – safe) at school.

2. Read again and answer: SB

- ① Where is the big first aid kit at school?
.....
- ② What must students do when someone gets hurt?
.....
- ③ Why mustn't students open the first aid kit without permission?
.....

Language in Use

Have to / Don't have to vs. Must / Mustn't for health rules

To talk about things we should do.

للتحدث عن أشياء يجب علينا فعلها.

Something necessary

شيء ضروري

Have to

We use "have to" to talk about something necessary.

- نستخدم "have to" للتحدث عن شيء ضروري.

..... الفعل في المصدر . have to + inf.

e.g. Students **have to wash** their hands.
- الطلاب يجب أن يغسلوا أيديهم.

Strong rule

قاعدة قوية

Must

We use "must" to talk about very important rule.

- نستخدم "must" للتحدث عن قاعدة هامة جدا.

..... الفعل في المصدر . must + inf.

e.g. You **must drink** water.
- يجب أن تشرب الماء.

VS

Remember

I/ We/ You/ They + **have to** + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر

Nurses **have to make** sure the first aid kit is full.

He/ She/ It + **has to** + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر

Salma **has to help** her mom.



Got it:

You must (eats) healthy food.

الإجابة الصحيحة هي (eat) لأن بعد must يأتي الفعل في المصدر.

To talk about things we shouldn't do.

للتحدث عن أشياء لا يجب علينا فعلها.

Something not necessary

شيء غير ضروري

Don't have to

We use "don't have to" to talk about something not necessary.

- نستخدم "don't have to" للتحدث عن شيء ليس ضروري.

..... الفعل في المصدر . don't have to + inf.

e.g. We **don't have to worry** about small cuts because the nurse will help us.
- لا داعي للقلق بشأن الجروح الصغيرة لأن الممرضة ستساعدنا.

Not allowed

شيء غير مسموح به

Mustn't

We use "mustn't" to talk about something not allowed.

- نستخدم "mustn't" للتحدث عن شيء غير مسموح.

..... الفعل في المصدر . mustn't + inf.

e.g. You **mustn't eat** too much candy.
- يجب ألا تأكل الكثير من الحلوى.

VS

Remember

I/ We/ You/ They + **don't have to** + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر

You **don't have to wear** a jacket. It's warm.

He/ She/ It + **doesn't have to** + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر

Omar **doesn't have to wake up** early tomorrow.



Got it:

You (**don't have to**) wash your hands before lunch.

الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**have to**) لأن من الضروري عليك فعله هو أن تغسل يديك قبل الغداء.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① The doctors (**have to** – **mustn't** – **don't have to** – **have**) check the patients in the examination room.
- ② We (**don't have to** – **must** – **mustn't** – **have**) study before exams.
- ③ They (**have** – **must** – **mustn't** – **don't have to**) follow the health rules.
- ④ You have to (**drinks** – **drinking** – **drink** – **drank**) warm drinks.
- ⑤ Students (**must** – **mustn't** – **don't have to** – **have**) be quiet in the library.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① We (**don't have to**) eat healthy food.
- ② Students (**mustn't**) listen to the teacher.
- ③ We must (**drinking**) a lot of water every day.
- ④ Students (**have to**) shout in class.
- ⑤ We (**must to**) be kind to our friends.

Quick Practice on Have to / Don't have to vs. Must / Mustn't for health rules

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You (mustn't) wash your hands before meals.
- 2 You (don't have to) drink plenty of water every day.
- 3 Children have to..... (being) polite to the nurse.
- 4 He must (drinks) water after exercising.
- 5 You (mustn't) bring your books every day.
- 6 We (must) run in the classroom.
- 7 Students must (wearing) the school uniform.
- 8 You (must to) listen to your teacher carefully.
- 9 We (must) eat too much candy.
- 10 Children (have to) play in the street.
- 11 They (have) to go to school on Friday.
- 12 We (must) waste water.
- 13 You (must) eat in the library.
- 14 Nurses (don't have to) make sure the first aid kit is always ready and full.
- 15 We (must) fight with our friends.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 homework – do – must – Students – their – every – day.
.....
- 2 aid – The first – kit – ready – is – and – clean.
.....
- 3 care – always – doctors – show – to patients – The.
.....
- 4 exercise – helps – stay – us – healthy – Daily.
.....
- 5 clean – rooms – keep – must – We – our.
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 You can find a in the nurse's room.
a) board b) first aid kit c) plane d) dangerous
- 2 The nurse used to cut the bandage.
a) a ruler b) scissors c) an eraser d) a brush
- 3 When you get a small cut, you have to put a on it.
a) plaster b) toy c) sticker d) cloth
- 4 We must be when helping someone who's hurt.
a) careful b) lazy c) bored d) angry
- 5 You wear a helmet when you ride a bike.
a) have b) mustn't c) don't d) must
- 6 The student went to the after falling in the playground.
a) nurse's room b) library c) art room d) hall
- 7 You cover your mouth when you cough.
a) mustn't b) must c) don't have to d) has to
- 8 A boy fell and got some on his arm.
a) pencils b) answers c) books d) bruises
- 9 You should always keep your first aid kit
a) dirty b) ready c) empty d) hidden

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

first aid kit – checked – bandage – injured – safe

At school, Adam was playing football with his friends during break time. He fell on the ground and hurt his leg a little. The nurse brought the (1) to help him. She cleaned the cut and put a (2) on it. Then, the doctor (3) him and told him to rest. Adam felt better and was happy to be (4)

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You (mustn't) wear your seatbelt in the car.
- 2 We (must) eat too much junk food.
- 3 The children (mustn't) follow the safety rules.
- 4 We (has to) finish our project now.

- 5 Children (must) play near the road.
- 6 We (don't have) to respect our teachers.
- 7 You (mustn't) listen carefully in the class.
- 8 They (must) talk during the exam.
- 9 We (must) touch the scissors; they are dangerous.
- 10 You (mustn't) do your homework now.
- 11 We must (are) quiet in the library.
- 12 I (have) to go to school on Friday.
- 13 Hassan doesn't (has) to cook dinner tonight.
- 14 You (must) be late for class.
- 15 We (must) throw rubbish on the ground.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

1 open – You – mustn't – aid kit – the – first.

.....

2 always – The nurse – how – help – knows – to.

.....

3 is injured – when someone – tell – a teacher – must – Students.

.....

Super
Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

1 there's a big first aid kit in the nurse's room

.....

2 what should we do if we feel sick

.....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Helping an injured student"

first aid kit – nurse – bandages

.....

.....

.....

.....





Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

donation	تبرع	care	رعاية
check-in	تسجيل الوصول	examination room	غرفة الفحص
tests	تحاليل	treatment plan	خطة علاج

Extra vocabulary

famous (adj)	مشهور	children's hospital	مستشفى الأطفال
free (adj)	مجان	money	نقود
hope	أمل	friendly (adj)	ودود
receptionist	موظف استقبال	playrooms	غرف اللعب
fun places	أماكن المرح	studies	دراسات
teamwork	عمل جماعي		

Expressions and Phrases

It is known	أنها معروفة	around the world	حول العالم
full of	ملء بـ	the most important	الأكثر أهمية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
donate يتبرع	donated	arrive يصل	arrived
explain يشرح	explained	continue يستمر	continued

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
pay يدفع	paid	become يصبح	became

Hospital 57-3-57: A Place of Hope مستشفى 57357: مكان للأمل



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Why is it important for hospitals to give some treatment for free or at low cost?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous **children's hospital**⁽¹⁾ in Cairo, Egypt. It is known not only in Egypt but also **around the world**⁽²⁾.

The hospital is very big and helps children who are sick. **The most important**⁽³⁾ thing is that all **treatment**⁽⁴⁾ is **free**⁽⁵⁾ for the children. Families do not have to pay because many people in Egypt **donate**⁽⁶⁾ money to the hospital.

These **donations**⁽⁷⁾ help children get the **care**⁽⁸⁾ they need and give their families **hope**⁽⁹⁾.

When children arrive, a friendly receptionist helps them **check-in**⁽¹⁰⁾.

Then a nurse takes them to the examination room for tests. After the tests, the doctor explains the treatment plan. The hospital also has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places so children can feel happy and safe. Teachers help children continue their studies while they are getting better. Hospital 57-3-57 is full of hope. It shows that donations and teamwork help every child become strong and healthy again.



- | | |
|------|----------------|
| (1) | مستشفى الأطفال |
| (2) | حول العالم |
| (3) | الأكثر أهمية |
| (4) | علاج |
| (5) | مجاني |
| (6) | يتبرع |
| (7) | التبرعات |
| (8) | الرعاية |
| (9) | أمل |
| (10) | تسجيل الوصول |

مستشفى 57-3-57 هو مستشفى مشهور للأطفال في القاهرة، مصر. وهو معروف ليس فقط في مصر، بل أيضًا في جميع أنحاء العالم. المستشفى كبير جدًا ويساعد الأطفال المرضى. وأهم شيء هو أن جميع العلاجات مجانية للأطفال. لا تحتاج العائلات إلى الدفع لأن الكثير من الناس في مصر يتبرعون بالمال للمستشفى. هذه التبرعات تساعد الأطفال على الحصول على الرعاية التي يحتاجونها وتمنح عائلاتهم الأمل. عندما يصل الأطفال، يساعدهم موظف استقبال ودود على تسجيل الوصول. ثم تأخذهم ممرضة إلى غرفة الفحص لإجراء التحاليل. بعد التحاليل، يشرح الطبيب خطة العلاج. كما يحتوي المستشفى على غرف لعب، ومكتبات، وأماكن ممتعة أخرى حتى يشعر الأطفال بالسعادة والأمان. ويساعد المعلمون الأطفال على متابعة دراستهم أثناء فترة العلاج. مستشفى 57-3-57 مليء بالأمل، ويظهر أن التبرعات والعمل الجماعي يساعدان كل طفل على أن يصبح قويًا وبصحة جيدة مرة أخرى.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital located in Cairo, Egypt.
- مستشفى 57-3-57 هو مستشفى مشهور للأطفال يقع في القاهرة، مصر.
- ✓ The hospital is known not only in Egypt, but around the world.
- المستشفى معروف ليس فقط في مصر، بل في جميع أنحاء العالم أيضًا.
- ✓ All treatment is free for children, and families do not have to pay.
- جميع العلاجات مجانية للأطفال، ولا تحتاج العائلات إلى الدفع.
- ✓ Many people in Egypt donate money to support the hospital.
- الكثير من الناس في مصر يتبرعون بالمال لدعم المستشفى.
- ✓ These donations help children receive care and give their families hope.
- هذه التبرعات تساعد الأطفال في الحصول على الرعاية وتمنح عائلاتهم الأمل.
- ✓ When children arrive, a receptionist and nurse help them check-in and take tests.
- عندما يصل الأطفال، يساعدهم موظف الاستقبال والممرضة في تسجيل الوصول وإجراء الفحوصات.
- ✓ The hospital has playrooms, libraries, and fun places to make children feel happy and safe.
- يحتوي المستشفى على غرف لعب ومكتبات وأماكن مريحة لجعل الأطفال يشعرون بالسعادة والأمان.
- ✓ Teachers help children continue their studies, and the hospital is full of hope and teamwork.
- كما يساعد المعلمون الأطفال على متابعة دراستهم، والمستشفى مليء بالأمل والعمل الجماعي.



Read and write (T) true or (F) false:



- ① Hospital 57-3-57 is only for adults. (.....)
- ② Doctors and nurses work together to help children. (.....)
- ③ Families must pay a lot of money to get treatment. (.....)
- ④ The hospital has playrooms and libraries for children. (.....)

Word Building Skills



Read and notice:

أقرأ ولاحظ:

Suffixes “-able / -ible”

The suffix “-able / -ible” is added to the end of a word to form an adjective.

اللاحقة “-able / -ible” تُضاف إلى نهاية الكلمة لتكون صفة.

-able	-ible
comfortable = يشعر بالراحة = able to feel relaxed	accessible = سهل الوصول إليه = easy to reach
curable = قابل للشفاء = able to be cured	reversible = قابل للعكس
readable = قابل للقراءة	visible = مرئي
washable = قابل للغسيل	
enjoyable = ممتع	

Pronunciation tips

1 The ending -able is usually pronounced /əbl/ → com-fort-a-ble, read-a-ble.

2 The ending -ible is usually pronounced /ɪbl/ → ac-cess-i-ble, revers-i-ble.

Stress is usually on the first syllable of the base word: COM-fort-able, CURE-able.

✓ **Checkpoint** Look at the pictures below. Complete the words using -able or -ible. **SB**



comforta_____



cur_____



read_____



wash_____



access_____



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Fatma reads about Hospital 57-3-57. (.....)
- 2 The hospital is only known in Egypt. (.....)
- 3 All treatment in the hospital is free. (.....)
- 4 People in Egypt donate money to the hospital. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Nurses take patients to the for tests.

a) office	b) examination room
c) classroom	d) library
- 2 We should money to hospitals to help sick people.

a) donate	b) hide	c) take	d) buy
-----------	---------	---------	--------
- 3 The doctor said the disease is with medicine.

a) fast	b) happy	c) curable	d) strong
---------	----------	------------	-----------
- 4 The nurse shows great for her patients.

a) care	b) food	c) rest	d) anger
---------	---------	---------	----------
- 5 A "....." is the person who helps people check in when they arrive at the hospital.

a) baker	b) receptionist	c) teacher	d) carpenter
----------	-----------------	------------	--------------
- 6 The hospital is to everyone in the city.

a) accessible	b) noisy	c) closed	d) tasty
---------------	----------	-----------	----------

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

donate – proud – school – examination room – check-up

Yesterday, Salma went to the clinic with her mother. She wanted to (1) some blood to help sick people. The nurse took her to the (2) and checked her health. After the (3), the doctor said she was healthy and kind. Salma felt (4) because she gave her time to help others.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt. It is known not only in Egypt but also around the world. The hospital is very big and helps children who are sick. The most important thing is that all treatment is free for the children. When children arrive, a friendly receptionist helps them check-in. Then a nurse takes them to the examination room for tests. After the tests, the doctor explains the treatment plan. The hospital also has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places so children can feel happy and safe.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hospital 57-3-57 is known around the
 a) city b) village c) world d) country
- 2 The doctor the treatment plan.
 a) draws b) takes c) drives d) explains

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who takes the children to the examination room?

.....

- 4 Why does the hospital have playrooms and libraries?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Many people in egypt donate money to the hospital

.....

- 2 how can donation help sick people

.....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Hospital 57-3-57"

famous – receptionist – hope



.....



Lessons 4 and 5

Sick Leave Request

طلب إجازة مرضية



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

sick leave	إجازة مرضي	request	طلب
business email	بريد إلكتروني رسمي	dear	عزيزي
healthy (adj)	صحي	habits	عادات

Extra vocabulary

understanding	تفهم/تقدير	polite (adj)	مؤدب	brain	عقل
---------------	------------	--------------	------	-------	-----

Expressions and Phrases

let you know	لأخبرك	Best regards	مع أطيب التحيات
at least	على الأقل	able to	قادر على
plenty of	كثير من	feel well	يشعر بصحة جيدة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
return	يعود	returned		exercise	يتدرب	exercised	
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
come	يأتي	came		grow	ينمو	grew	

A Sick Day: Business Email

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

From: Karim

The person who is sending the email.

الشخص الذي يرسل البريد الإلكتروني.

To: Ramy

The person who is receiving the email.

الشخص الذي يستقبل البريد الإلكتروني.

The subject line tells what the email is about.

سطر الموضوع يوضح عن ماذا يدور البريد الإلكتروني.

Subject: Sick Leave for Two Days

Dear Mr. Ramy,

Greeting: we start with "Dear" + the person's name.

التحية: نبدأ بـ «Dear» متبوعة باسم الشخص.

I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today.

I have a fever and a sore throat, so I need to rest at home.

Reason for writing and short explanation.

سبب الكتابة وشرح مختصر.

I will not be able to come to work for two days. I hope to feel better and return on

Wednesday, October 15th.

Explain how long the leave will be and when you'll come back.

اشرح مدة الإجازة ومتى ستعود.

Thank you for your understanding.

A polite closing sentence.

جملة ختامية مهذبة.

Best regards,

Karim Hassan

A formal closing, your full name at the end.

خاتمة رسمية، اسمك الكامل بالنهاية.



من: كريم إلى: رامى الموضوع: إجازة مرضية لمدة يومين

عزيزي السيد رامى،

أكتب لأعلمك أننى لا أشعر بصحة جيدة اليوم. لدى حمى والتهاب فى الحلق، لذلك أحتاج إلى الراحة فى المنزل.

لن أتمكن من الذهاب إلى العمل لمدة يومين. أمل أن أشعر بتحسن وأعود يوم الأربعاء، ١٥ أكتوبر.

شكراً لتفهمك. مع أطيب التحيات، كريم حسن



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Karim sends a business email to Ramy. - يرسل كريم بريداً إلكترونياً رسمياً إلى رامي.
- ✓ Karim needs a sick leave for two days. - يحتاج كريم إلى إجازة مرضية لمدة يومين.
- ✓ He isn't feeling well. - لا يشعر أنه بصحة جيدة.
- ✓ He has a fever and a sore throat. - لديه حمى وألم في الحلق.
- ✓ He will not be able to come to work. - لن يكون قادراً على الذهاب إلى العمل.
- ✓ He hopes to feel better and return on Wednesday. - يأمل أن يشعر بتحسن ويعود يوم الأربعاء.



Read again and write (T) true or (F) false: SB

- ① Karim had a stomachache and a headache. (.....)
- ② The subject of the email is "Sick Leave for Two Days". (.....)
- ③ Karim will be away from work for two days. (.....)

Practice Writing a formal email



You have a fever and you want to send a sick leave request to your school. Write an email of about (30-40) words to your teacher. SB

To :

From :

Subject :

Dear,

Reason for writing and short explanation

Explain how long, when, or what will happen next

A polite closing sentence

A formal closing: your full name at the end

A Healthy Tip Bookmark

إشارة مرجعية لنصائح صحية



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Healthy Habits



1. Wash Your Hands

Always wash your hands before eating and after using the bathroom to stay clean and healthy.

اغسل يديك دائماً
قبل الأكل وبعد استخدام الحمام لتبقى نظيفاً وصحياً.



2. Eat Healthy Food

Eat fruits, vegetables, and drink plenty of water to help your body grow strong.

تناول طعاماً صحياً
تناول الفواكه والخضراوات، واشرب كمية كافية من الماء لمساعدة جسمك على النمو بشكل قوى.



3. Get Enough Sleep

Sleep at least 8-10 hours every night so your body and brain can rest.

احصل على قسط كافٍ من النوم
نم لمدة ٨ - ١٠ ساعات على الأقل كل ليلة حتى يتمكن جسمك وعقلك من الراحة.



4. Exercise Every Day

Play, exercise, and run every day to keep your body strong.

مارس الرياضة كل يوم
العب، ومارس الرياضة، واركض كل يوم للحفاظ على قوة جسمك.

Steps:

1 Take a strip of paper in the shape of a bookmark. خذ شريطاً من الورق على شكل علامة للكتاب.

2 Front Side: على الجانب الأمامي:

✓ Write a title for your bookmark, like "Healthy Habits" or "Stay Strong!"

اكتب عنواناً لعلامتك المرجعية، مثل «العادات الصحية» أو «ابق قوياً!».

✓ Draw something related to health, like fruits, water, soap, or a fit person.

ارسم شيئاً له علاقة بالصحة، مثل الفواكه، الماء، الصابون، أو شخص لائق بدنياً.

3 Back Side: الجانب الخلفي:

✓ Write 2–4 short health tips.

اكتب من ٢ إلى ٤ نصائح صحية قصيرة.

Example:

✓ "Wash your hands."

«اغسل يديك.»

✓ "Eat vegetables."

«تناول الخضار.»

✓ "Drink water every day."

«اشرب الماء كل يوم.»

✓ "Don't eat too much junk food."

«لا تأكل الكثير من الوجبات السريعة.»

4 Decorate: التزيين:

✓ Add colors, stickers, or patterns to make your bookmark bright and fun.

أضف ألواناً، ملصقات، أو نقوشاً لجعل علامة الكتاب مشرقة وممتعة.

5 Share: المشاركة:

✓ Show your bookmark to the class and read your health tips aloud.

أظهر الإشارة المرجعية الخاصة بك للفصل واقرأ نصائحك الصحية بصوت عالٍ.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should eat more to stay healthy.
a) vegetables b) sweets c) chips d) cake
- 2 Doing keeps your body strong.
a) drawing b) exercise c) toys d) reading
- 3 Brushing your teeth every day is a habit.
a) bad b) funny c) lazy d) healthy
- 4 Get enough sleep so your body and can rest.
a) stomach b) brain c) leg d) hand
- 5 I hope to feel better and to my work on Sunday.
a) eat b) return c) understand d) able
- 6 You can be by saying "thank you" and "please".
a) polite b) rude c) fast d) lazy
- 7 Washing your hands before meals keeps you stay
a) clean b) angry c) sleepy d) busy
- 8 Eat vegetables to help your body grow
a) weak b) slow c) boring d) strong

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

care – habits – exercise – sleep – vegetables

Every morning is a new chance to live better and take care of our bodies. We should always follow healthy (1) to stay strong and active. Eating fresh (2) gives us energy for the day. We also need to (3) and keep our hands and homes clean. When we (4) for our health, every day becomes a happy one.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I am Jana. Last week, my father was sick. He had a fever and a sore throat, so he needed to rest at home. He wasn't able to go to work, so he wrote a business email to his manager to inform him. He explained that he couldn't come to work and hoped to feel better soon and return. My father also saw a doctor and took medicine. To get well soon, he ate healthy food like fruits and vegetables and made sure to get enough sleep, at least 8 to 10 hours each night.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Jana's father had a fever and a
 a) cough b) headache c) sore throat d) stomachache
- 2 He made sure to get enough every night.
 a) sleep b) exercise c) homework d) water

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did Jana's father write a business email?

- 4 How many hours did he sleep each night?

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 mother – My – needs to – at – rest – home.

- 2 your – Thank – you – understanding – for.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Should i sleep for 8 hours

- 2 I will return on monday

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Living healthy"

healthy habits – wash – exercise



Unit 2

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

headache	صداع	cough	كحة
sore throat	ألم بالحنك	fever	حمى
examination room	غرفة الفحص	patient	مريض
serious	خطير	pharmacy	صيدلية
medicine	دواء	clinic	عيادة
check up	فحص	tired	متعب

Lesson (2)

first aid kit	عدة الإسعافات الأولية	accidents	حوادث
bandages	ضمادات	plasters	لاصقات طبية
scissors	مقص	cuts	جروح
bruises	كدمات	permission	إذن/تصرح
inside	بداخل	injured	مصاب

Lesson (3)

famous	مشهور	children's hospital	مستشفى أطفال
treatment	علاج	free	مجاني
donations	تبرعات	care	رعاية
hope	أمل	receptionist	موظف استقبال
check-in	تسجيل الوصول	friendly	ودود
tests	تحاليل	plan	خطة

Lessons (4 and 5)

sick leave	إجازة مرضي	request	طلب
business email	بريد إلكتروني رسمي	dear	عزيزي
able to	قادر على	healthy	صحي
habits	عادات	plenty of	كثير من
enough	كاف	understanding	تفهم/تقدير

Language in Use

Have to / Don't have to vs. Must / Mustn't for health rules

Something necessary

شيء ضروري

I/ We/ You/ They + **have to** + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Students **have to** wash their hands.

Something not necessary

شيء غير ضروري

I/ We/ You/ They + **don't have to** + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر

e.g. We **don't have to** worry about small cuts because the nurse will help us.

Strong rule

قاعدة قوية

Subject + **must** + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر

e.g. You **must** drink water.

Not allowed

غير مسموح به

Subject + **mustn't** + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر

e.g. You **mustn't** eat too much candy.

Unit 2

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في الإجابة عن اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
headache		ألم بالحلق
cough		حمى
patient		فحص
medicine		صيدلية
weak		غرفة الفحص

Lesson 2	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
first aid kit		مقص
bandages		حوادث
bruises		جروح
dangerous		إذن/تصريح

Lesson 3	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
famous		مستشفى أطفال
free		علاج
hope		تبرعات
check-in		رعاية
friendly		تحاليل

Lessons 4 and 5	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
sick leave		بريد إلكتروني رسمي
request		صحي
understanding		عقل
dear		كثير من

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصرفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال			
Present	Past	Present	Past
.....	rested	hope	.....
come	.....	.....	felt
.....	took care	.....	knew
hurt	.....	call	.....
.....	returned	.....	grew

لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب .



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات:

How to write about "How to stay healthy at school"

- o If a student gets المرض اسم المرض.
- o The nurse has to + ما يجب على الممرضة فعله
- o Students must + ما يجب على الطلاب فعله
- o Students mustn't + ما لا يجب على الطلاب فعله

"How to stay healthy at school"

If a student gets hurt, the nurse has to check the first aid kit and help them right away. Students must tell a teacher or the nurse when someone is injured. We mustn't open the first aid kit without permission because some things inside can be dangerous.

How to write about "Hospital 57-3-57":

- o I visited + اسم المكان
- o The hospital is in + اسم موقعها
- o The hospital is + وصف للمستشفى
- o The most important thing is + أهم شيء تقدمه المستشفى
- o The hospital is supported by + اسم الداعمين للمستشفى

"Hospital 57-3-57"

I visited Hospital 57-3-57. It is in Cairo. The hospital is very big and helps children who are sick. The most important thing is that all treatment is free for children. It is supported by donations from people.

1 Fill in the blanks (have to / don't have to):

- 1 Students tell a teacher or the nurse if someone is injured.
- 2 Nurses make sure the first aid kit is always ready and full.
- 3 You drink plenty of water every day to stay healthy.
- 4 Students bring their own bandages because the nurse already has them in the first aid kit.

2 Fill in the blanks using words from the box:

safe – nurse – careful – first aid – ready

- 1 At our school, there's a big kit in the nurse's room.
- 2 Students must tell a teacher or the when someone is injured.
- 3 Nurses have to make sure the kit is always clean,, and full.
- 4 The first aid kit helps everyone stay at school.
- 5 We must all remember to be and play safely so we don't get hurt.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Students (must / mustn't) wash their hands before lunch.
- 2 A patient (must / mustn't) see the doctor when they are sick.
- 3 Children (must / mustn't) eat too much candy when they are sick.
- 4 You (must / mustn't) brush your teeth every day to keep them healthy.
- 5 We (must / mustn't) cover our mouth when we cough.



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 There are many patients at the clinic. (.....)
- 2 The nurses do not help the patients. (.....)
- 3 The doctor checks each patient carefully. (.....)
- 4 Patients go to the pharmacy to get their food. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 We must be when using scissors.
a) careful b) lazy c) loud d) fast
- 2 I have a sore throat. I must drink
a) milk b) warm liquids c) ice cream d) juice
- 3 We exercise to stay healthy.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) doing d) must
- 4 We wake up early to catch the school bus.
a) have to b) has to c) mustn't d) don't have to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

wash – kit – bandages – cut – hurt

Yesterday, we were playing football. My friend Omar (1) his hand while playing. He went to the nurse because he had a small (2) The nurse has a big first aid (3) She put bandages on Omar's cut. She advised Omar to (4) his hand. It is important to listen to the nurse.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

I am Ramy. Yesterday, I had a stomachache. I went to the doctor. He checked my stomach and gave me some advice. He said I have to eat healthy food and drink more water. He also said I mustn't eat too much sweets and candy. After that, my mother and I went to the pharmacy inside the hospital to get the medicine. I was nervous at first, but I felt happy when I got the medicine because I knew I would feel better soon.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ramy had a
a) cold b) sore throat c) stomachache d) headache
- 2 Ramy has to eat food.
a) salty b) unhealthy c) bad d) healthy

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What advice did the doctor give Ramy?
- 4 Where is the pharmacy?
- 5 Why did Ramy feel happy?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Students have to (washing) their hands before meals.
- 2 You (mustn't) brush your teeth twice every day.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 feel – hope – I – better – I – quickly.
.....

- 2 room – the – Where – is – examination?
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 jana doesn't feel well today
.....

- 2 Where did fady go after seeing the doctor
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

“Healthy habits”

eat more vegetables – play outside daily – wash my hands





Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Ali went to the clinic because he had a headache and hurt his hand. (.....)
- 2 The nurse gave Ali some medicine and bandages. (.....)
- 3 Ali must eat a lot of candy. (.....)
- 4 Ali should wash his hands regularly. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 We need plasters and bandages when we have and cuts.
a) bruises b) stomachaches c) books d) fever
- 2 The hospital must be for all patients.
a) accessible b) heavy c) slow d) dirty
- 3 We wear jackets because it is so hot.
a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) having
- 4 You have to your best to win the match.
a) does b) doing c) did d) do

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

care – healthy – donate – clothes – clean

In hospitals, many people work together to help patients. We should keep hospitals (1) We should (2) to hospitals to help the patients. Nurses give (3) and support to all patients, so families feel safe. Doctors and nurses always do their best to make everyone (4) again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

I am Mariam. I am from Egypt. I visited Hospital 57-3-57 in Cairo. It is one of the biggest children's hospitals in the world. It gives free treatment to children. The hospital is supported by donations from people all over Egypt. We saw doctors and nurses helping the children. They are very helpful and kind. There are teachers who help children study. There is a pharmacy where medicine is given. There are bright playrooms and libraries. There are special rooms for the families.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hospital 57-3-57 gives free to children.
a) toys b) cars c) clothes d) treatment
- 2 The doctors and nurses are very and kind.
a) angry b) sad c) tired d) helpful

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where is Mariam from?
- 4 What do teachers do in the hospital?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 We (not have) go to school on Saturday.
- 2 He must (wears) a uniform at school.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 water – drink – must – You – every – day.
.....
- 2 before – your – meal – Wash – each – hands.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how can we help injured people
.....
- 2 exercise daily to stay strong and healthy
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

“Visiting the doctor”

sore throat – follow doctor’s advice – take medicine



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 The big first aid kit is in the (classroom – nurse's room – playground).
 2 When a student gets injured, they must (help themselves – don't care – tell a teacher).
 3 We must all be (sick – careful – lazy) when playing.

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

warm – cough – have – students

Sara : What should (1)..... do if they have a headache?

Nurse: They (2)..... to come to the examination room.

Sara : And if a student has a sore throat or a (3).....?

Nurse: The student has to drink (4)..... liquids.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Many people (donate – sell – treat) money to help Hospital 57-3-57.
 2 The friendly (doctor – receptionist – nurse) helps them check-in.
 3 You (should – mustn't – must) open the first aid kit without permission.
 4 If you feel sick, you (have to – mustn't – don't have to) stay home and rest.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 You must rests and drink warm liquids. (.....)
 2 If a student gets hurt, the nurse have to check the first aid kit and help. (.....)
 3 We mustn't be careful when walking down the stairs. (.....)
 4 The treatment is free, so families have to pay. (.....)

D. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is very important to stay safe at school. We must be careful when we play in the playground. Our school has a special room called the nurse's room, which has a big first aid kit. If a student is injured, students must tell the nurse or a teacher. The first aid kit is always clean and ready to help in the small accidents. If the injury is serious, the nurse must call parents. Students don't have to worry, because the nurse always knows how to help.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 It is not important to stay safe at school. (.....)
 2 There is a special room called the nurse's room at school. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 The first aid kit is always (dirty – missed – clean) and ready to help.
 4 If a student is injured, students must tell the nurse or a (receptionist – cleaner – teacher).
 5 Students don't have to (play – worry – call), because the nurse always knows how to help.

E. Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences:

"How to stay safe"

first aid kit – nurse – injured – safe

.....

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We made a/an for the school talent show.
a) photo b) song c) lunch d) arrangement
- 2 I read stories when I was six.
a) can b) can't c) were d) could
- 3 I like paper in art class.
a) running after b) listening to c) crafting with d) jumping over
- 4 He has a good voice. He loves on stage.
a) shopping b) drawing c) performing d) sleeping
- 5 The students are about the school trip.
a) tired b) sleepy c) excited d) hungry
- 6 A/An is something you do because you enjoy it.
a) exam b) rule c) chore d) hobby
- 7 I can the piano well.
a) plays b) play c) playing d) played
- 8 The children are on the swings in the park.
a) studying b) reading c) sleeping d) playing
- 9 We had a class about hobbies.
a) discussion b) race c) dance d) match
- 10 I like puzzles with my brother on weekends.
a) washing b) eating c) solving d) closing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A free time – have fun – enjoyment – science – classmates

My school is big and has many classrooms and a nice playground. I like to work on (1)..... projects with my friends. After classes, we relax and talk about our day. In my (2)....., I read stories or draw pictures. Sometimes, my (3)..... and I play games to (4)..... together.

B

talent – creativity – decided – arrangement – schoolwork

My name is Hamza. At my school, a group of students (1)..... to start a Hobby Club. The (2)..... was simple; each student would share a special (3)..... . The Hobby Club became a place of (4)..... and fun.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 She (can't) read last year, but now she can.
- 2 I (can) swim when I was three. I loved playing in the pool every day.
- 3 We (could) see the stars last night. The sky was cloudy and dark.
- 4 She (can) ride a bike, she doesn't like cycling.
- 5 He (can) climb trees very fast as a child. He was always the first to reach the top.
- 6 I (not / can) find my bag now. It was on the table a minute ago.
- 7 My sister (could sang) when she was five. She performed in front of the family.
- 8 She (can't) swim very fast now. She joined the school swimming team.
- 9 They (can) finish their homework yesterday. They stayed up late to complete it.
- 10 She (can) come to the party today. Her parents said she must stay home.

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 maha likes to relax after finishing her schoolwork
.....
- 2 do you enjoy reading books
.....
- 3 playing games is one of my favorite hobbies
.....

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The boy got on his hand while cooking.
a) bruises b) cuts c) bandages d) scissors
- 2 The nurse opened the to help the injured boy.
a) phone b) first aid kit c) scissors d) book
- 3 The patient went to the desk to at the hospital.
a) check-in b) hurt c) worry d) injured
- 4 She had all over her legs after falling.
a) bruises b) meals c) posters d) permissions
- 5 The man was badly in the car accident.
a) injured b) careful c) checked in d) excited
- 6 Don't, the doctors will help you soon.
a) worry b) study c) smile d) relax
- 7 Be when walking near the broken glass.
a) careful b) injured c) dangerous d) excited
- 8 Touching the wet electric wire is very
a) dangerous b) high c) tasty d) nice
- 9 The doctor used to cut the bandages carefully.
a) plasters b) scissors c) cuts d) permissions
- 10 He wrapped around the patient's injured arm.
a) cuts b) bandages c) permission d) bruises

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

curable – park – treatment – clinic – receptionist

Yesterday, I had a small accident while playing football. I went to the (1)....., and the (2)..... helped me see the doctor quickly. He said my injury was (3)....., and that I would be fine soon. He also gave me the right (4)..... to help me get better fast.

B

teamwork – tests – color – care – comfortable

Yesterday, I went to the hospital after I fell at school. The nurse did some medical (1)..... to check my arm. Doctors and nurses were kind and gave me excellent (2)....., so my parents were happy. The doctors worked with great (3)..... and made me feel safe and (4)..... during the visit.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 We (**mustn't**) wear warm clothes in winter.
- 2 You (**not must**) shout in the classroom.
- 3 They (**have**) bring their lunch today.
- 4 He (**must**) eat too many sweets.
- 5 We (**not must**) be late for the exam.
- 6 You (**has to**) do your homework every day.
- 7 Children (**don't have to**) help their parents at home.
- 8 We must (**listened**) carefully to our teacher.
- 9 You mustn't (**running**) in the hospital.
- 10 They (**have not to**) clean their desks every day.

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Did the doctor give maya good care
.....
- 2 now i feel much better and more comfortable.
.....
- 3 who helps patients at the hospital
.....

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar enjoys in the park every weekend.
a) coughing b) singing c) cycling d) swimming
- 2 The children are painting and showing their
a) scissors b) headache c) receptionists d) creativity
- 3 We need to every day to stay strong and healthy.
a) exercise b) read c) write d) sleep late
- 4 The show will be amazing.
a) sleep b) talent c) medicine d) cough
- 5 Children love playing in the after their check ups.
a) libraries b) playrooms c) hospitals d) clinics

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 First – lives – kits – many – save – aid.
.....

- 2 receptionist – The – kind – very – is.
.....

- 3 solving – hobby – favorite – is – My – puzzles.
.....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 You (must to) finish your project before Friday.
- 2 My brother (could) play the piano now. He learned from his music teacher.
- 3 When I was young, I (can't) climb trees easily.
- 4 They can (played) football very well now.
- 5 My brother (can't) ride a bike when he was three.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My teacher asked us to write our about the story.
a) opinions b) hobbies c) medicines d) plasters
- 2 We must be when crossing the street near the school.
a) careful b) creative c) energetic d) comfortable
- 3 We use to cut paper safely.
a) plasters b) bandages c) scissors d) medicine
- 4 The doctor said my cut is and will get better soon.
a) injured b) dangerous c) sick d) curable
- 5 My brother joined the to improve his art skills.
a) playroom b) hospital c) Hobby Club d) pharmacy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

creativity – teamwork – craft – fun – comfortable

Last week, I joined the Hobby Club at school. We worked on different projects that required (1)..... and imagination. We learned (2)..... and problem-solving. The classroom was bright and (3)....., so we could focus and enjoy every moment while learning and having (4)..... together.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 She (**can't**) sing when she was three, but she could paint.
- 2 You (**mustn't**) take your medicine on time.
- 3 I (**can't**) find my shoes yesterday. They were under the bed.
- 4 We (**not have to**) go to school on public holidays.
- 5 She mustn't (**touches**) the hot stove.



1 Read and complete the dialog:

nurse – sore throat – clinic – fever

Ali : Hi, Sara! You look a bit tired. Are you okay?

Sara : Not really, Ali. I have a (1) and a bad (2)

Ali : Oh no! Did you go to the doctor?

Sara : Yes, I went to the (3) yesterday.

Ali : Who helped you there?

Sara : The (4) was very kind and gave me some medicine to feel better.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Children (**must** – **mustn't** – **have to**) talk to strangers.
- 2 They (**must** – **mustn't** – **don't have to**) respect the school rules.
- 3 We enjoy many (**medicines** – **activities** – **plasters**) after school, like painting and cycling.
- 4 My brother joined the (**clinic** – **library** – **Hobby Club**) to practice his guitar skills.

3 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 Amgad have to help his father. (.....)
- 2 Maya can't solve puzzles when she was young. (.....)
- 3 We must share our passwords with others. (.....)
- 4 The children have to eat too much ice cream. (.....)
- 5 Hana could draw amazing pictures now. (.....)
- 6 The patient mustn't go to the doctor. (.....)
- 7 My little brother could swim well now. (.....)
- 8 You must stay up late when you're sick. (.....)



MODULE 2

Unit 3: Suitcase Stories

Unit 4: Jobs in the Animal Kingdom

Unit

3

Suitcase Stories

قصص حقيبة السفر



Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- identify the gist in short dialogs about travel plans. - يحدد جوهر المحادثات القصيرة حول خطط السفر.
- identify specific details in short dialogs about travel plans. - يحدد تفاصيل محددة في محادثات قصيرة حول خطط السفر.
- recognize the meaning of travel-related unknown vocabulary in spoken texts. - يتعرف على معنى المفردات غير المعروفة المتعلقة بالسفر في النصوص المنطوقة.

Speaking:

- use target vocabulary to discuss travel preparations and destinations. - يستخدم المفردات المستهدفة لمناقشة استعدادات ووجهات السفر.
- express future plans and intentions using "going to" in affirmative, negative, and question forms. - يعبر عن الخطط والنوايا المستقبلية باستخدام «going to» في صيغ الإثبات والنفي والاستفهام.
- talk about future travel plans in a role-play format. - يتحدث عن خطط السفر المستقبلية بتنسيق لعب الأدوار.

Reading:

- identify the main idea in a short text about Egypt and camping. - يحدد الفكرة الرئيسية في نص قصير عن مصر والتخييم.
- identify key details in texts about travel experiences. - يحدد التفاصيل الرئيسية في النصوص حول تجارب السفر.
- recognize the meaning of unknown words using clues. - يتعرف على معنى الكلمات غير المعروفة باستخدام الأدلة.

Writing:

- write about future plans using "going to". - يكتب خططًا مستقبلية باستخدام «going to».
- write an informal email invitation to a friend. - يكتب دعوة غير رسمية عبر البريد الإلكتروني إلى صديق.
- design a travel adventure book. - يصمم كتاب مغامرات السفر.



Lesson 1 Off We Go!



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Main Vocabulary



suitcase
حقية السفر



pack
تحزم أمتعتها



travel
يسافر



crowded
مزدحم



beach
شاطئ



ticket
تذكرة

Extra vocabulary

tonight	الليلة	swimming suit	ملابس السباحة	already	بالفعل
except	ما عدا	quickly	بسرعة	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي
Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية	sunscreen	واقي الشمس	bus station	محطة أتوبيس

Expressions and Phrases

Not yet.	ليس بعد.	by the way	بالمناسبة	of course	بالطبع
by the beach	بجوار الشاطئ	Me too!	وأنا ايضا!	See you!	أراك لاحقا!

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
travel يسافر	traveled	pass يمر	passed
pack يحزم أمتعته	packed	check يفحص	checked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
put يضع	put	build يبني	built
tell يخبر	told	forget ينسى	forgot

Definitions

suitcase	a large bag for clothes when traveling	حقية كبيرة للملابس عند السفر
pack	to put things in a bag before a trip	أن تضع الأشياء في الحقية قبل الرحلة
travel	to go to another place	أن تذهب إلى مكان آخر
crowded	full of many people	ممتلئ بالعديد من الناس
beach	a sandy place near the sea	مكان رملي بجانب البحر
ticket	something that proves you can enter a place or get a service	شيء يثبت أنه بإمكانك دخول مكان أو الحصول على خدمة

Last-Minute Packing حزم الأمتعة في اللحظة الأخيرة



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Sara

Sohaila, I'm so excited—we're finally going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow!

سهيلة، أنا متحمسة جدًا - سنسافر أخيرًا إلى الإسكندرية غدًا!

I'm so excited too! Did you pack your suitcase?

أنا متحمسة جدًا أيضًا! هل حزمت أمتعتك؟



Sohaila



Sara

Not yet. I'm going to pack tonight. I need to put in my summer clothes, my swimming suit, and my camera. What about you?

ليس بعد. سأحزم أمتعتي الليلة. عليّ أن أضع ملابس الصيف، وبدلة السباحة، وكاميرتي. ماذا عنك؟

I already packed my suitcase yesterday! I put in everything except my toothbrush. By the way, do you have our bus tickets?

لقد حزمت أمتعتي بالأمس! وضعتُ فيها كل شيء ما عدا فرشاة أسناني. بالمناسبة، هل لديك تذاكر الأتوبيس الخاصة بنا؟



Sohaila



Sara

Yes, my mother has all the tickets. She told me the bus is going to be very crowded because it's the summer vacation and many families are traveling.

نعم، والدتي لديها جميع التذاكر. أخبرتني أن الأتوبيس سيكون مزدحمًا جدًا لأنها عطلة الصيف والعديد من العائلات تسافر.

That's okay. We can sing songs together to make the time pass quickly!

لا بأس. يمكننا غناء الأغاني معًا لجعل الوقت يمر بسرعة!



Sohaila



Sara

Great idea! What are you most excited to see in Alexandria?

فكرة رائعة! ما هو أكثر شيء أنت متحمسة لرؤيته في الإسكندرية؟

I really want to see Qaitbay Citadel and the new library, Bibliotheca Alexandrina. And of course, I'm excited to build sandcastles by the beach!

أريد رؤية قلعة قايتباي حقا والمكتبة الجديدة، مكتبة الإسكندرية. وبالطبع، أنا متحمسة لبناء قلاع رملية على الشاطئ!



Sohaila



Sara

Me too! Don't forget to put sunscreen in your suitcase when you finish packing.

وأنا أيضًا! لا تنس وضع واقي الشمس في حقبتك بعد الانتهاء من حزم أمتعتك.

I won't! I'm going to double-check my suitcase before sleeping.

لن أنسى! سأتحقق من حقيتي مرة أخرى قبل النوم.



Sohaila



Sara

Me too. I'll see you tomorrow at the bus station!

وأنا أيضًا. أراك غدًا في محطة الأتوبيس!

See you!



Sohaila

أراك لاحقًا!



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Sara and Sohaila are very happy and excited about traveling to Alexandria.
- سارة وسهيله سعيدتان ومتحمستان لسفرهما الى الإسكندرية.
- ✓ Sara is going to pack her suitcase tonight.
- ستقوم سارة بتجهيز حقيبتها الليلة.
- ✓ Sohaila already packed her suitcase, except her toothbrush.
- سهيلة جهزت حقيبتها بالفعل باستثناء فرشاة أسنانها.
- ✓ Sara needs to pack her summer clothes, swimming suit, and camera.
- سارة تحتاج إلى وضع ملابسها الصيفية، وبدلة السباحة، والكاميرا.
- ✓ Sara's mother has all the bus tickets.
- والدة سارة معها تذاكر الأتوبيس.
- ✓ Sara's mother says that the bus will be crowded because many families are traveling.
- تقول والدة سارة أن التوبيس ستكون مزدحم لأن العديد من العائلات تسافر.
- ✓ They plan to sing songs on the bus to make the time pass quickly.
- هما يخططان لغناء الأغاني في الأتوبيس ليجعلا الوقت يمر سريعا.
- ✓ They really want to visit Qaitbay Citadel, the new library, and the beach.
- هما حقا يريدان زيارة قلعة قايتباي، والمكتبة الجديدة، والشاطئ.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① We pack our clothes in a (suitcase – ticket – beach – box) when we travel.
- ② To (swim – build – pack – travel) is to go to another place.
- ③ My father bought the (tickets – sunscreens – clothes – suits), so we can travel by bus.
- ④ I really want to visit Qaitbay (Castle – Citadel – School – Library) and the new library.
- ⑤ Mazen (passed – packed – built – put) his suitcase because he is traveling tomorrow.

2. Read again and answer: SB

- ① When are Sara and Sohaila going to travel?
.....
- ② What does Sara pack in her suitcase?
.....
- ③ What does Sohaila want to see in Alexandria?
.....



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Sara and Maya are friends. (.....)
- 2 They are going to pack their suitcases tomorrow. (.....)
- 3 They are excited to see the Qaitbay Citadel. (.....)
- 4 They won't swim or build sandcastles by the beach. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The bus was very, there were too many people inside.
a) empty b) crowded c) quiet d) clean
- 2 Children like swimming and building by the beach.
a) homes b) schools c) gardens d) sandcastles
- 3 A "....." is a large bag for clothes when traveling.
a) beach b) suitcase c) ticket d) citadel
- 4 To "....." means to put things in a bag before a trip.
a) travel b) forget c) pack d) sing
- 5 We must have to take the bus.
a) tickets b) sunscreen c) swim suits d) sunglasses
- 6 A is a sandy place near the sea.
a) suitcase b) trip c) beach d) citadel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

beach – Citadel – pack – travel – excited

Sara and Sohaila are going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow. Sara is going to (1)..... her suitcase tonight with summer clothes and her swimming suit. They will swim and build sandcastles by the (2)..... . They really want to see Qaitbay (3)..... and the new library. They are so (4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Alexandria is a very beautiful city in Egypt. Last summer, my family and I went there on our summer trip. We packed our suitcases with clothes and my swimming suit. My dad bought the tickets, and we were very happy to travel together. In Alexandria, we went to the beach every day. We swam in the sea and built sandcastles on the sand. We also saw the Qaitbay Citadel and the big library. It was a great vacation, and I can't wait to go there again!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Alexandria is a very beautiful city in
 a) France b) China c) Egypt d) America
- 2 The underlined word "packed" means
 a) put things in a bag b) called someone
 c) bought food d) bought tickets

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did they go to Alexandria?

- 4 Who bought the tickets?

- 5 What did they do in Alexandria?

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 have – Do – you – tickets – our?

- 2 are – Where – you – travel – going to – next summer?

- 3 crowded – going to – The – is – bus – be.

- 4 my suitcase – to – I am – pack – going – tonight.

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 I really want to see qaitbay Citadel

- 2 The beach in alexandria is so beautiful



Lesson 2

Discovering Egypt



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main Vocabulary



The Pyramids
الأهرامات



Egyptian temple
معبد مصري



a boat on the Nile River
قارب في نهر النيل

Extra vocabulary

home country	الوطن	Egyptian	مصري	places	أماكن
light outfits	ملابس خفيفة	hot weather	طقس حار	adventure	مغامرة
pharaohs	فراعنة	south	الجنوب	powerful (adj)	قوى
Nile cruise	رحلة نيلية	island	جزيرة	chance	فرصة

Famous Ancient Sites

أماكن أثرية شهيرة

the Great Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة العظيمة	Sphinx	أبو الهول
tombs	مقابر	temples of Karnak and Luxor	معابد الكرنك والأقصر

Expressions and Phrases

move abroad	انتقل إلى الخارج	one-week vacation	إجازة لمدة أسبوع
get ready	يستعد	world's greatest open-air museum	أعظم متحف مفتوح في العالم

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
move ينتقل / يتحرك	moved	want يريد	wanted
explore يستكشف	explored	call يسمى	called
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
take يأخذ	took	spend يقضي	spent

A Special Trip Home رحلة مميزة إلى الوطن



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Why do you think people from all over the world travel to Egypt?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Next week, Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to their **home country**⁽¹⁾, Egypt! He is Egyptian, but he **moved abroad**⁽²⁾ many years ago. Now, he wants to show his family the most beautiful places in their **one-week vacation**⁽³⁾.

First, they are getting ready with their suitcases, where they packed **light outfits**⁽⁴⁾, hats, and sunglasses for the hot weather. Their adventure starts in Cairo. They are going to see the Great Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. They are very excited to see **tombs**⁽⁵⁾ of ancient Egyptian kings, as their father told them stories about the ancient **pharaohs**⁽⁶⁾ who built them.

Then, they are going to take a train south to Luxor. People often call it the "world's greatest open-air museum." There, they are going to **explore**⁽⁷⁾ the amazing **temples of Karnak**⁽⁸⁾ and Luxor, and learn about **powerful kings**⁽⁹⁾ like Ramses II.

They are going to Aswan on a beautiful **Nile cruise**⁽¹⁰⁾. They are going to take a boat called "felucca" and see the beautiful islands.

Finally, they are going to spend the last two days of their trip in Alexandria.

They are going to swim in the sea and build sandcastles on its famous beach.

This trip is a wonderful chance for the family to know their country together.

- | | |
|------|------------------|
| (1) | الوطن |
| (2) | انتقل للخارج |
| (3) | إجازة لمدة أسبوع |
| (4) | ملابس خفيفة |
| (5) | مقابر |
| (6) | فراعنة |
| (7) | يستكشف |
| (8) | معابد الكرنك |
| (9) | ملوك أقوياء |
| (10) | رحلة نيلية |

في الأسبوع المقبل، سيسافر السيد ماجد وعائلته إلى وطنهم مصر! هو مصري، لكنه انتقل للعيش في الخارج منذ سنوات عديدة. والآن، يريد أن يُرى عائلته أجمل الأماكن في عطلتهم التي ستستمر أسبوعًا.

أولاً، يستعدون بحقائبهم، حيث حزموا ملابس خفيفة وقبعات ونظارات شمسية للطقس الحار. تبدأ مغامرتهم في القاهرة، حيث سيزورون أهرامات الجيزة العظيمة وأبو الهول. إنهم متحمسون للغاية لرؤية مقابر ملوك مصر القدماء، حيث روى لهم والدهم قصصًا عن الفراعنة القدماء الذين بنوها.

ثم سيأخذون قطارًا جنوبًا إلى الأقصر. غالبًا ما يُطلق عليها الناس «أعظم متحف مفتوح في العالم». هناك، سيستكشفون معابد الكرنك والأقصر الرائعة، ويتعرفون على ملوك أقوياء مثل رمسيس الثاني.

سيذهبون إلى أسوان في رحلة نيلية رائعة. سيأخذون قاربًا يُدعى «فلوكة» لمشاهدة الجزر الجميلة. وأخيرًا، سيقضون اليومين الأخيرين من رحلتهم في الإسكندرية. سيسبحون في البحر وبنون قلعةً رملية على شاطئها الشهير. هذه الرحلة فرصة رائعة للعائلة للتعرف على بلدهم معًا.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Next week, Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to Egypt.
- الأسبوع القادم، سيسافر السيد ماجد وعائلته إلى مصر.
- ✓ Mr. Maged moved abroad many years ago and wants to show his family Egypt.
- انتقل السيد ماجد للخارج منذ سنوات عديدة ويريد أن يرى عائلته مصر.
- ✓ They packed light clothes, hats, and sunglasses for the hot weather.
- جهزوا ملابس خفيفة وقبعات ونظارات شمسية للطقس الحار.
- ✓ They are going to see the Great Pyramids and the Sphinx.
- سيرون أهرامات الجيزة العظيمة وأبو الهول.
- ✓ They are excited to see tombs of Ancient Egyptian kings.
- هم متحمسون لرؤية مقابر ملوك مصر القدماء.
- ✓ Next, they will take a train to Luxor, which is called the "world's greatest open-air museum."
- بعد ذلك، سيسافرون بالقطار إلى الأقصر، التي تُسمى «أعظم متحف مفتوح في العالم».
- ✓ In Luxor, they will explore the temples of Karnak and Luxor and learn about kings like Ramses II.
- في الأقصر، سيستكشفون معابد الكرنك والأقصر ويتعرفون على الملوك مثل رمسيس الثاني.
- ✓ They will go to Aswan on a Nile cruise and ride a felucca to see the islands.
- سيسافرون إلى أسوان في رحلة نيلية ويركبون القلعة لرؤية الجزر.
- ✓ Finally, they are going to spend two days in Alexandria, swimming and building sandcastles.
- أخيرًا، سيقضون يومين في الإسكندرية، يسبحون ويبنون القلاع الرملية.
- ✓ This trip is a great chance for the family to know their country together.
- هذه الرحلة فرصة رائعة للعائلة للتعرف على بلدهم معًا.



Read again and answer: SB

① Why is this trip to Egypt very special for Mr. Maged's family?

.....

② How is the family traveling from Luxor to Aswan?

.....

③ What is the family going to do in Alexandria?

.....

Language in Use

Planned Future "be + going to"

We use "going to" when we talk about something we plan to do in the future.

نستخدم «going to» عندما نتحدث عن شيء نخطط للقيام به في المستقبل.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + **am/is/are** + **going to** + **inf.** ... الفعل في المصدر

I	am	going to + inf. ... الفعل في المصدر
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	is	
You/ We/ They/ اسم جمع	are	

e.g. Sally **is going to pack** her suitcase.

e.g. They **are going to stay** in a hotel.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + **am/is/are (not)** + **going to** + **inf.** ... الفعل في المصدر

I	am not	going to + inf. ... الفعل في المصدر
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	is not = isn't	
You/ We/ They/ اسم جمع	are not = aren't	

e.g. I **am not going to forget** my passport.

e.g. We **are not going to stay** at home.



Got it:

We are going to (**traveling**) to Alexandria next holiday.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**travel**) لأن بعد (**going to**) يأتي الفعل في المصدر (**inf.**).

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ(هل):

Am/Is/Are + subject (الفاعل) + **going to** + **inf.** ... الفعل في المصدر?

e.g. A: **Is she going to wear** sunglasses?

e.g. A: **Are they going to travel** to Cairo?

B: **Yes, she is.**

B: **No, they aren't.**

Wh-question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word + **am/is/are** + subject (الفاعل) + **going to** + **inf.** ...? الفعل في المصدر.e.g. A: What **is** he **going to** do?e.g. A: Where **are** you **going to** travel next week?B: He **is going to** pack his suitcase.B: I **am going to** travel to Alexandria.

Got it:

Is she going to (**stayed**) in a hotel?● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**stay**) لأن بعد (**going to**) يأتي الفعل في المصدر (**inf**).

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

tomorrow غدا / next القادم (week/ month/ year) / soon قريبا / in the future المستقبل في المستقبل
 later لاحقاً / in a few (minutes/ hours / days) من بعد القليل من / one day يوماً ما

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① I am going to (**takes – take – taking – took**) many photos on the trip.
- ② Hassan is (**go – went – going – goes**) to swim in the sea tomorrow.
- ③ Lama is going to (**cleans – clean – cleaning – cleaned**) her room in a few minutes.
- ④ My mom isn't going to (**baked – bakes – baking – bake**) a cake for my birthday next week.
- ⑤ (**Is – Are – Am – Be**) she going to call her friend later?

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① Omar is going to (**taking**) the bus to school tomorrow.
- ② Are the students (**go to**) visit the museum next month?
- ③ I am going to (**bought**) souvenirs to my friends on the next trip.
- ④ Mona is going to (**visits**) her grandparents next Monday.
- ⑤ My dad (**are**) going to sleep early, because he is tired.

Quick Practice on Planned Future “be + going to”

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I'm going to (started) a new hobby next week.
- 2 Hana is going to (visits) the school library in a few minutes.
- 3 My dad is (go to) buy the bus tickets tomorrow.
- 4 My brother is going to (washed) the car later.
- 5 The boys are going to (hikes) on a natural trail.
- 6 Lara is going (in) pack her swim suit and sunglasses.
- 7 Omar (are) going to visit his grandparents soon.
- 8 Are they (go) to travel together?
- 9 What are you going to (does) tomorrow?
- 10 Is he (goes to) visit the Great Pyramids?
- 11 We (is) going to take the train to Luxor.
- 12 Mazen is going to (spends) two days in Alexandria.
- 13 The children are going to (built) sandcastles by the beach.
- 14 Our teacher is going to (told) us stories.
- 15 My family is (goes to) explore the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor later.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 the – I'm – to – going – visit – beach.
.....
- 2 aren't – They – to – stay – going – at home.
.....
- 3 going to – Maged – light – pack – is – outfits.
.....
- 4 Amira – spend – is – in – two days – going to – Luxor.
.....
- 5 are – travel – We – to our – going to – home country.
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Luxor has many like Karnak and Luxor.
a) hospitals b) citadels c) temples d) classes
- 2 I'm going to my medicine in a few hours.
a) takes b) take c) took d) taking
- 3 It's very hot in Luxor, I need to pack outfits.
a) old b) new c) light d) warm
- 4 I was so excited to see the ancient tombs that the ancient built.
a) teachers b) doctors c) vets d) pharaohs
- 5 Ramses II is a very king.
a) powerful b) young c) kind d) helpful
- 6 My father works abroad, but he visits his every year.
a) citadel b) school c) home country d) restaurant

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

abroad – Pyramids – explore – adventure – home

Mr. Maged and his family are going to visit Egypt. He is Egyptian, but he moved (1)..... many years ago. Their (2)..... starts in Cairo. They are going to see the Great (3)..... of Giza and the Sphinx. Then, they are going to Luxor and Aswan to (4)..... the amazing temples. It's a wonderful chance for them to know their country together.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (is) going to travel next week.
- 2 She is (goes) to be a doctor because she loves helping people.
- 3 Noha is (go) to swim tomorrow.
- 4 The students (is) going to visit the Pyramids in a few days.
- 5 We (is) going to travel early to catch the plane.
- 6 They are going to (exploring) the temple of Luxor.
- 7 He (are) going to pack his suitcase tonight.

- 8 I'm going to (takes) a picture of the sunset.
- 9 We are going to (buying) tickets for the bus.
- 10 She is (goes) to study hard next year.
- 11 Where are you going to (traveling)?
- 12 Are they going (too) eat pizza?
- 13 Is your mom going to (made) lunch?
- 14 The children (is) going to build sandcastle by the beach.
- 15 I'm (go) to buy tickets for the Egyptian Museum.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 moved – many – ago – abroad – Mr. Maged – years.

.....

- 2 take – Hassan – going to – the train – is – to Luxor.

.....

- 3 I am – to – going – the temple – visit – of Karnak.

.....

- 4 a lot of – Egypt – has – to visit – places – beautiful. Super Question ?

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 who built the Pyramids

.....

- 2 we can go on a Nile cruise to see beautiful places.

.....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“Places to visit in Egypt”

Pyramids – temple – the Nile

.....

.....

.....

.....





Lesson 3

A Night Under the Stars

Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

camping trip	رحلة تخيم	warm (adj)	دافئ	campsite	مخيم / معسكر
campfire	نار المخيم	hike	المشي لمسافات طويلة	trail	ممر / مسار

Extra vocabulary

Wadi El Gemal	وادي الجمال	torch	كشاف يدوي	water bottle	زجاجة مياه
another	آخر	tents	خيام	near	بالقرب من
mountain	جبل	desert	صحراء	moments	لحظات
nature	طبيعة	special (adj)	مميز	first	الأول

Expressions and Phrases

look for	يبحث عن	so much fun	ممتع جدًا
----------	---------	-------------	-----------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
receive يستلم	received	arrive يصل	arrived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
say يقول	said	set up ينصب الخيمة	set up
sit يجلس	sat	leave يغادر	left



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Next weekend, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school **camping trip**⁽¹⁾. We are going to pack our suitcases with **warm**⁽²⁾ clothes, a **torch**⁽³⁾, and a water bottle. Our teacher told us that those who want to go on the trip, they need to **receive**⁽⁴⁾ their bus tickets today. She said the **campsite**⁽⁵⁾ is going to be crowded because another school is visiting too.

- | | |
|-----|------------|
| (1) | رحله تخييم |
| (2) | دافئ |
| (3) | كشاف يدوي |
| (4) | يتسلم |
| (5) | مخيم |

✓ Checkpoint

The (**class** – **campsite** – **school** – **library**) is going to be crowded because another school is visiting too.

The middle

When we arrive, we are going to **set up**⁽⁶⁾ our tents near some amazing mountains. Our teacher is going to teach us about **desert plants**⁽⁷⁾ and animals. In the evening, we are going to sit around a **campfire**⁽⁸⁾ and tell stories. I am going to take lots of photos to share happy moments with my family.

- | | |
|-----|----------------|
| (6) | ينصب (الخيمة) |
| (7) | نباتات صحراوية |
| (8) | نار المخيم |

✓ Checkpoint

They are going to (**leave** – **arrive** – **receive** – **set up**) tents near some amazing mountains.

The end

The next morning, we are going to **hike**⁽⁹⁾ on a **nature trail**⁽¹⁰⁾ and look for special birds. Before we leave, we are going to **clean**⁽¹¹⁾ the campsite carefully to keep it clean. This is going to be my first camping trip, and I think it is going to be so **much fun**⁽¹²⁾!

- | | |
|------|--------------------|
| (9) | يمشي لمسافات طويلة |
| (10) | مسار طبيعي |
| (11) | ينظف |
| (12) | الكثير من المتعة |

✓ Checkpoint

They are going to leave the campsite (**hot** – **clean** – **warm** – **bad**).

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع القادم، سيسافر صفنا إلى منتزه وادي الجمال الجميل في رحلة تخييم مدرسية. سنحزم حقائبنا بملابس دافئة، وكشاف يدوي، وزجاجة ماء. أخبرتنا معلمتنا أنه على الراغبين في المشاركة في الرحلة تسلم تذاكر الأتوبيس اليوم. وقالت إن موقع التخييم سيكون مزدحمًا لأن مدرسة أخرى ستقوم بزيارة أيضًا. عند وصولنا، سننصب خيامنا بالقرب من بعض الجبال الخلابة. سنعلمنا معلمتنا عن نباتات وحيوانات الصحراء. في المساء، سنجلس حول نار المخيم ونروي القصص. سألتقط الكثير من الصور لأشارك عائلتي لحظات سعيدة. في صباح اليوم التالي، سنتنزه في مسار طبيعي ونبحث عن الطيور المميزة. قبل أن نغادر، سننظف موقع التخييم بعناية للحفاظ على نظافته. ستكون هذه أول رحلة تخييم لي، وأعتقد أنها ستكون ممتعة للغاية!



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The class is going to travel to Wadi El Gemal Park for a camping trip.
- الفصل سوف يسافر إلى منتزه وادي الجمال في رحلة تخييم.
- ✓ The students will pack warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle.
- الطلاب سوف يجهزون حقائبهم بملابس دافئة، وكشاف يدوي، وزجاجة ماء.
- ✓ The campsite will be crowded because another school is visiting too.
- موقع التخييم سيكون مزدحمًا لأن مدرسة أخرى ستقوم بزيارة أيضًا.
- ✓ The students will set up their tents near the mountains.
- سيقوم الطلاب بنصب خيامهم بالقرب من الجبال.
- ✓ The teacher will teach them about desert plants and animals.
- ستعلمهم المعلمة عن نباتات وحيوانات الصحراء.
- ✓ In the evening, they will sit around a campfire and tell stories.
- في المساء، سيجلسون حول النار ويحكون القصص.
- ✓ The next day, they will hike on a nature trail and look for birds.
- في اليوم التالي، سيسيروا في مسار طبيعي ويبحثون عن الطيور.
- ✓ Before leaving, they will clean the campsite to keep it clean.
- قبل المغادرة، سينظفون مكان التخييم ليظل نظيفًا.



Write (T) true or (F) false: SB

- ① The class is going to travel to the beach for camping. ()
- ② They need to receive their bus tickets for the trip. ()
- ③ Only their school is going to the campsite. ()
- ④ They are going to clean the campsite before leaving. ()



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

An **adverb**: tells us how we do something. We can make many adverbs by adding (-ly) to adjectives.

يُخبرنا الحال بكيفية فعل شيء ما. يُمكننا تكوين العديد من الظروف بإضافة (-يا) إلى الصفات.

Adjective الصفة	Adverb الحال
quick سريع <i>e.g.</i> It's a quick rabbit.	quickly بسرعة <i>e.g.</i> The rabbit runs quickly .
loud عالٍ / صاخب <i>e.g.</i> There is a loud song.	loudly بصوت عالٍ <i>e.g.</i> The children sing loudly .
happy سعيد <i>e.g.</i> The kids are happy .	happily بسعادة <i>e.g.</i> The kid sings happily .
careful مهتم / حذر <i>e.g.</i> She is a careful girl.	carefully بعناية / بحذر <i>e.g.</i> She paints the picture carefully .
quiet هادئ <i>e.g.</i> He is a quiet boy.	quietly بهدوء <i>e.g.</i> He walked quietly into the library.
slow بطيء <i>e.g.</i> The turtle is slow .	slowly ببطء <i>e.g.</i> It moves slowly .
brave شجاع <i>e.g.</i> My father is very brave .	bravely بشجاعة <i>e.g.</i> He helped the lost boy bravely .
strong قوى <i>e.g.</i> Omar is strong .	strongly بقوة <i>e.g.</i> He can push the door strongly .

✓ **Checkpoint** Change the following into adverbs: **SB**

1 slow →

2 quiet →

3 brave →

4 strong →



Lesson 3

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 When we go camping, we sleep in a
a) home b) hotel c) tent d) school
- 2 They can in the mountain and enjoy nature.
a) draw b) swim c) hike d) sleep
- 3 Don't forget to take a when you go camping.
a) torch b) book c) pen d) notebook
- 4 Fady solved the puzzle and smiled.
a) quick b) slow c) quickly d) brave
- 5 I'm going to take lots of photos to happy moments with my family.
a) share b) sit c) arrive d) forget
- 6 She walked into the library.
a) loud b) loudly c) quiet d) quietly
- 7 The old car climbed the hill **SB**
a) slow b) slowly c) brave d) bravely
- 8 Last summer, my family and I went near the mountains. **SB**
a) cleaning b) running c) camping d) singing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

campfire – tents – warm – campsite – fun

Our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. We are going to pack our suitcase with (1)..... clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. When we arrive, we are going to set up our (2)..... near the amazing mountains. In the evening, we are going to sit around a (3)..... and tell stories. I think it's going to be so much (4).....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Camping is a very fun activity. We can go camping in nature, in the desert, or near a mountain. We need to pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a **torch**, and a water bottle. Sometimes, we can go hiking on a trail and take pictures of trees and animals. At night, we can make a campfire, sit around it, and tell stories. I love camping because it teaches us to be brave, help each other, and enjoy beautiful moments in nature.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A "**torch**" is something we use to give us
 a) fire b) water c) light d) camps
- 2 Camping teaches us to be
 a) brave b) bored c) scared d) shy

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where can we go camping?

- 4 What things can we take when we go camping?

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 trip – is – my – camping – **This** – first.

- 2 **They** – near – set up – their tents – a mountain.

- 3 going to – are – **We** – clean – the – campsite.

- 4 need to – **We** – the – bus – ticket – today – receive.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 where are you going to hike

- 2 I'm going to travel to wadi El Gemal park.



Lessons 4 and 5



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Egypt	مصر	Nile River	نهر النيل	koshari	كشري
-------	-----	------------	-----------	---------	------

Extra vocabulary

summer	فصل الصيف	old (adj)	قديم	Egyptian food	طعام مصري
delicious (adj)	لذيذ - شهى	vehicle	مركبة	fact	حقيقة

Expressions and Phrases

miss you so much	أفتقدك كثيرا جدا	lots of	كثير من
places to see	أماكن تراها	let me know	أخبرني

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
want يريد	wanted	hope يأمل / يتمنى	hoped
invite يدعو	invited	promise يعد	promised

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see يرى	saw	forget ينسى	forgot
know يعرف	knew	come يأتي	came

Writing Email Invitation كتابة دعوة عبر البريد الإلكتروني



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Have you ever invited a friend to visit your home or city?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

From: Ramy

To: Max

Subject: Invitation to visit Egypt

I hope you are doing well! I miss⁽¹⁾ you so much. I want to invite⁽²⁾ you to visit Egypt this summer. It's an amazing country with lots of⁽³⁾ fun places to see!

You must visit the Great Pyramids of Giza—they're so big and old⁽⁴⁾! We can also ride a boat⁽⁵⁾ on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea. Don't forget⁽⁶⁾ to try Egyptian food like koshari. It's delicious⁽⁷⁾!

My family and I will show you around. I promise⁽⁸⁾ you'll have the best time!

Please let me know⁽⁹⁾ if you can come. I can't wait to see you!

Your friend,

Ramy

(1)	يفتقد
(2)	يدعو
(3)	كثير من
(4)	قديم
(5)	قارب
(6)	ينسى
(7)	لذيذ
(8)	يعد
(9)	أخبرني



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Ramy writes an invitation to his friend Max, to invite him to visit Egypt.
- يكتب رامى دعوة لصديقه ماكس، ليدعوه لزيارة مصر.
- ✓ Egypt is an amazing country with lots of places to see.
- مصر بلد رائع به الكثير من الأماكن التي يمكن رؤيتها.
- ✓ They can visit the Great Pyramids of Giza.
- يمكنهم زيارة الأهرامات العظيمة بالجيزة.
- ✓ They can also ride a boat on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea.
- كما يمكنهم أيضًا ركوب قارب على نهر النيل والتمتع بجمال البحر الأحمر.
- ✓ They can try the Egyptian food like koshari.
- يمكنهم تجربة الطعام المصري مثل الكشري.

عزيزى ماكس،

أتمنى أن تكون بخير! أفتقدك كثيرًا. أود دعوتك لزيارة مصر هذا الصيف. إنها بلد رائع به العديد من الأماكن الممتعة لراها! لا بد لك من زيارة أهرامات الجيزة العظيمة - إنها ضخمة وقديمة! يمكننا أيضًا ركوب قارب في نهر النيل ورؤية البحر الأحمر الجميل. لا تنس تجربة الطعام المصري، مثل الكشري. إنه لذيذ!

سأخذك أنا وعائلتي في جولة. أعدك بأنك ستقضى وقتًا ممتعًا! أرجوك أخبرني أن كان بإمكانك الحضور. أتطلع لرؤيتك!

صديقك،

رامى

How to write an informal email invitation

How to write an informal email invitation:

كيف تكتب دعوة غير رسمية عبر البريد الإلكتروني:

New message

← → ↺

Greeting التحيّة **Dear,** (اسم المرسل إليه)

a friendly opening بداية ودودة I hope you are doing well! I miss you so much.

Invitation: الدعوة I want to invite you to visit Egypt!

Describe Places: (اختر مكانين و اكتب جملتين عن كل منهما) وصف الأماكن

Closing: Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!

Your friend,

(اسمك)

⋮ 🗑️ *qnt silt no ob at plog sta uoy lrdw* A 🔗 ✎ 🖼️ 🔍 Send ▾

Your turn:

Write an email of about (30–40) words to your friend from America inviting him to visit Egypt. **SB**

New message

← → ↺

From:

To :

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

⋮ 🗑️ A 🔗 ✎ 🖼️ 🔍 Send ▾

Think and Create



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Design your own "Travel Adventure Book"

Create a page for each type of travel:

أنشئ صفحة لكل نوع من أنواع السفر:

1 Draw or find a picture of the vehicle (bus, train, plane, etc.).

1. ارسم أو ابحث عن صورة للمركبة (حافلة، قطار، طائرة، إلخ).

2 Write the name of the vehicle and draw where it travels.

e.g. a bus on a road, a plane in the sky, a boat on water.

2. اكتب اسم المركبة وارسم وجهة سفرها (مثلاً، حافلة على الطريق، طائرة في السماء، قارب على الماء).

3 Add a "Ticket" (draw one!) and write:

3. أضف «تذكرة» (ارسم واحدة!) واكتب:

• One fact about this type of travel:

e.g. "A train can carry many people at once!"

* معلومة واحدة عن هذا النوع من السفر مثلاً، «يمكن للقطار أن يحمل العديد من الأشخاص في وقت واحد!».

• One sentence about what you are going to do on this trip:

e.g. "I am going to look out of the window at the scenery!"

* جملة واحدة عما ستفعله في هذه الرحلة، مثلاً: «سأنظر من النافذة إلى المناظر الطبيعية!».

Example Page:

Vehicle: Bus

Fact: Buses are a cheap way to travel to school or to visit cities.**My Sentence:** I am going to talk with my friends and sing songs on the bus.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I want to you to visit Egypt this summer.
a) miss b) invite c) forget d) hope
- 2 is an Egyptian food which is delicious.
a) Koshari b) Vehicle c) River d) Place
- 3 I ride a on the Nile River.
a) bike b) car c) bus d) boat
- 4 Egypt is an amazing country with lots of to see.
a) rivers b) places c) seas d) food
- 5 I can't to see my grandparents. I miss them so much.
a) wait b) want c) see d) start
- 6 Please let me if you can come.
a) do b) visit c) know d) have

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Egyptian – Pyramids – old – invite – places

My name is Adam. I want to (1)..... my friend Mark to visit Egypt this summer. Egypt is an amazing country with lots of fun (2)..... to see. We can visit the Great (3)..... of Giza. We can also ride a boat on the Nile River. We can try (4)..... food like koshari. I can't wait to see Mark.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Lara. I want to invite my Italian friend, Anna to visit Egypt, because she really wants to see the Great Pyramids of Giza. They're so big and old. We are going to see the beautiful Red Sea and ride a boat on the Nile River. We can try delicious Egyptian food like koshari. My family and I will take her to many places to see. I'm sure we will have an amazing time together. I can't wait to see her!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Lara wants to her Italian friend, Anna.
a) visit b) invite c) take d) have
- 2 The underlined word "delicious" means
a) bad b) cheap c) good d) old

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why does Anna want to visit Egypt?
- 4 What are they going to do on the Nile River?
- 5 What kind of food can they try?

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 an – country – Egypt – amazing – is.
.....
- 2 hope – you – well – doing – I – are!
.....
- 3 can't – wait – to – you – I – see.
.....
- 4 invite – want – I – you – to visit – Egypt – to.
.....
- 5 can – a boat – We – the Nile – ride – on – River.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 I want to see the beautiful red sea.
.....
- 2 what are you going to do next summer
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY words using the words below:**"Your friend's visit to Egypt"**

Pyramids – koshari – the Nile



.....

.....

.....

.....



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

suitcase	حقيرة سفر	tonight	الليلة
pack	يحزم الأمتعة	swimming suit	ملابس السباحة
travel	يسافر	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي
crowded	مزدحم	beach	شاطئ
ticket	تذكرة	sunscreen	واقي شمس

Lesson (2)

The Pyramids	الأهرامات	boat	قارب
Egyptian temple	معبد مصري	adventure	مغامرة
home country	الوطن	pharaohs	الفرعون
Sphinx	أبو الهول	island	جزيرة
tombs	مقابر	Nile cruise	رحلة نيلية

Lesson (3)

warm	دافئ	campsite	مخيم / معسكر
camping trip	رحلة التخييم	trail	ممر / مسار
hike	المشي لمسافات طويلة	campfire	نار التخييم
torch	كشاف يدوي	mountains	جبال
tents	خيام	nature	طبيعة

Lessons (4 and 5)

summer	فصل الصيف	Egyptian food	طعام مصري
delicious	لذيذ / شهى	places to see	أماكن تراها
vehicle	مركبة أو وسيلة مواصلات	fact	حقيقة

Language in Use

Planned Future "be + going to"

Affirmative Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + **am/is/are** + **going to** + **inf.** ... الفعل في المصدر.

e.g. I'm going to visit the beach.

Negative Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + **am/is/are (not)** + **going to** + **inf.** ... الفعل في المصدر.

e.g. She is not going to eat too much.

Yes/No question:

Am/Is/Are + subject (الفاعل) + **going to** + **inf.** ...? الفعل في المصدر.

e.g. Are you going to catch the train?

Keywords

tomorrow / غدا / next / القادم (week/ month/ year) / soon / قريبا / in the future / المستقبل / في المستقبل
later / لاحقاً / in a few (minutes/ hours / days) / بعد القليل من / one day / يوماً ما

Unit 3

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في الإجابة عن اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
suitcase	شاطئ
ticket	محطة أتوبيس
crowded	قلعة قايتباي
sunscreen	يحمزمت أمتعتته
tonight	ملابس السباحة

Lesson 2

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
The Pyramids	مصرى
Egyptian temple	طقس حار
a boat	قوى
pharaohs	مغامرة
light outfits	مقابر

Lesson 3

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
camping trip	نار التخييم
hike	كشاف يدوى
mountain	صحراء
nature	مميز
trail	خيام

Lessons 4 and 5

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
Egypt	مركبة
summer	لذيذ/ شهى
Nile River	قديم

Conjugation of verbs

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present	Past	Present	Past
travel			passed
build		forget	.....
.....	spent	explore	.....
set up			arrived
receive		sit	.....



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "My Visit to Alexandria"

- I am going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow.
- Alexandria is + وصف لمدينة الإسكندرية.
- It has a beach + الأنشطة التي ستقوم بها على الشاطئ.
- I want to see + أمثلة مثل قلعة قايتباي ومكتبة الإسكندرية.
- I am going to have a wonderful time there.

"My Visit to Alexandria"

I am going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow. Alexandria is a very beautiful city in Egypt. It has a lovely beach where I can swim, and build sandcastles. I also want to visit Qaitbay Citadel and the new library "Bibliotheca Alexandrina". I am going to have a wonderful time there!

How to write about "Camping"

- Camping is a very fun activity.
- We can camp in + أماكن التخييم.
- We need to take + أدوات التخييم.
- At night we make a campfire الأنشطة التي يمكن القيام بها ليلاً.
- It teaches us + الاستفادة من التخييم.

"Camping"

Camping is a very fun activity. We can go camping in nature, the desert, or a park. We need to take a tent, sleeping bags a torch, and water with us. At night, we can make a campfire and sit around it to talk about nature, or tell stories. Camping teaches us to be brave and work together. I love camping because it's full of adventure and joy.

1 Choose the correct word to complete each sentence:

- 1 We set up our near the lake for the night.
a) temple b) ancient c) tent d) hike
- 2 The archaeologists discovered an statue in the desert.
a) green b) ancient c) new d) modern
- 3 Last summer, my family and I went near the mountains.
a) cleaning b) running c) camping d) singing
- 4 Let's to the top of that hill to see the view.
a) camp b) swim c) fly d) hike
- 5 We visited the beautiful, old to learn about history.
a) temple b) pool c) park d) hospital

2 Correct the mistake:

- 1 She going to travel tomorrow.
.....
- 2 They is going to pack their suitcases.
.....
- 3 We are go to build a sandcastle.
.....
- 4 He are going to buy a ticket.
.....
- 5 I am go to visit my cousins next week.
.....

3 Read each sentence. Circle the adverb that ends with -ly:

- 1 The children laughed loudly at the funny story.
- 2 She walked quietly into the library.
- 3 Fady solved the puzzle quickly and smiled.
- 4 My brother plays football happily with his friends.



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Yara's family decided to go to Aswan next week. (.....)
- 2 She has to pack her suitcase. (.....)
- 3 The bus is going to be very crowded. (.....)
- 4 They can't sing at the bus. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 means full of many people.
a) Amazing b) Beautiful c) Crowded d) Great
- 2 At the, we sit around a campfire and tell stories.
a) school b) campsite c) temple d) Pyramids
- 3 The children are going to sandcastles by the beach.
a) build b) building c) builds d) built
- 4 What Salma going to do next week?
a) are b) do c) am d) is

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

old – boat – invite – country – promise

My name is Amgad. I want to (1)..... my friend to visit Egypt this summer. It's an amazing (2)..... with lots of fun places to see! He must visit the Great Pyramids of Giza – they are so big and (3)..... . We can also ride a (4)..... on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Mr. Tarek and his family are going to travel to their home country, Egypt! He is Egyptian, but he moved abroad many years ago. Now, he wants to show his family the most beautiful places in their one-week vacation. First, they are going to visit the Great Pyramids in Giza. They are very old and beautiful. The ancient Egyptians built Pyramids a long time ago. Then, they are going to take a train south to Luxor. They are going to explore the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor, and learn about powerful kings like Ramses II.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Mr. Tarek is
 a) French b) American c) Chinese d) Egyptian
- 2 The underlined word "powerful" means
 a) old b) big c) strong d) young

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What are Mr. Tarek and his family going to visit first in Giza?

- 4 Who built the Pyramids?

- 5 Where are they going to travel after visiting Giza?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 My mother (are) going to cook our dinner.
- 2 The driver drove the bus (slow).

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 going to – tonight – I'm – my – pack – suitcase.

- 2 are – Where – going to – you – travel – next – holiday?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 egypt is a very beautiful country
- 2 where is he going to play football

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"A special trip to Egypt"
 Pyramids – the Nile – temples





Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة: راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The class is going to travel for a school camping trip. (.....)
- 2 We are going to pack warm outfits. (.....)
- 3 We're going to set up our tents near some rivers. (.....)
- 4 We are going to learn about desert plants and animals. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The is a sandy place near the sea.
a) citadel b) Pyramid c) tomb d) beach
- 2 Mona packed some for her summer trip.
a) jackets b) light outfits c) coats d) boots
- 3 We're going to on a natural trail.
a) hikes b) hiked c) hike d) hiking
- 4 Is Amr to travel next month?
a) went b) go c) goes d) going

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

tickets – crowded – pack – travel – Citadel

Sara and Sohaila are friends. They are going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow. Sara is going to (1)..... her suitcase tonight with summer clothes, her swim suit, and her sunscreen. Sara's mother has their bus (2)..... . The bus will be (3)..... because it's summer holiday. They really want to see Qaitbay (4)..... and the new library.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Camping is a fun outdoor activity where we sleep in tents and enjoy nature. Next month, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. When we arrive, we are going to set up our tents near some amazing mountains. Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals. In the evening, we are going to sit around a campfire and tell stories. I am going to take lots of photos to share happy moments with my family.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Camping is a fun activity.
a) outdoor b) indoor c) inside d) school
- 2 We sleep in while camping.
a) beds b) tents c) homes d) rooms

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When is the class going to travel for the camping trip?
.....
- 4 What is the teacher going to teach them about?
.....
- 5 What are they going to do in the evening?
.....



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 We are going to (cleaning) the campsite.
- 2 He (are) going to buy a ticket.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 father – going – My – is – to – hike – tomorrow.
.....
- 2 is – It – first – trip – my – camping.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 where are you going to travel next summer
- 2 nada isn't going to watch TV

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

“Your school camping trip”

suitcases – torch – campsite



تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأهر.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- Hassan is going to (swim – hike – run) on a nature trail.
- He is looking for special (birds – animals – plants).
- This is going to be his (first – second – third) camping trip.

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

too – pack – beach – What

Sara : I'm so happy because our families are going to Alexandria together.

Sohaila : I'm so excited. Did you (1) your suitcase?

Sara : Not yet, I'm going to pack it tonight. What about you?

Sohaila : I already packed my suitcase yesterday. (2) are you most excited to see in Alexandria?

Sara : The (3), Qaitbay Citadel, and the new library.

Sohaila : Me (4), I can't wait.

C. Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer:

- I'm going to (pack – forget – buy) my suitcase to travel tonight.
- Omar is going to (visiting – visits – visit) the Pyramids tomorrow.
- A (ticket – suitcase – beach) is something that proves you can enter a place or get a service.
- Menna isn't (goes – going – go) to take her camera.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- Is Nour go to wear her sunglasses? ()
- Maged isn't going to puting on his jacket. ()

- My mom aren't going to buy the tickets. ()

- The rabbit runs quick. ()

D. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My name is Amira. I'm going to travel to Luxor with my family. We are going to take a train to Luxor. People often call Luxor the "world's greatest open-air museum." We are going to explore the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor, and learn about powerful kings like Ramses II. We are going to Aswan on a beautiful Nile cruise. We are going to take a boat called a "felucca" and see the beautiful islands.

A Write "True" or "False":

- Amira is going to travel to Alexandria. ()
- They will take the train to Luxor. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

- We are going to (explore – clean – receive) the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor.
- We are going to Aswan on a beautiful Nile (taxi – cruise – ship).
- We are going to take a boat called "felucca" and see the beautiful (homes – islands – hotels).

E. Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences:

"A visit to Egypt"

visit – country – Nile River – koshari



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- recognize key words about animal helpers.
- identify the gist in short dialogs about animals and their jobs.

- يتعرف على الكلمات الأساسية المتعلقة بالحيوانات المساعدة.
- يحدد الفكرة العامة فى محادثات قصيرة عن الحيوانات ووظائفها.

Speaking:

- describe animal jobs using simple sentences.
- take turns asking and answering questions about animals.
- express opinions on appreciating and protecting animal helpers.

- يصف وظائف الحيوانات باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- يتبادل الأدوار فى طرح الأسئلة والإجابة عنها حول الحيوانات.
- يوضح رأيه فى تقدير وحماية الحيوانات المساعدة.

Reading:

- identify the main idea of a text about animal jobs.
- identify specific details of short informational texts about animal jobs.

- يحدد الفكرة الرئيسية فى نص عن وظائف الحيوانات.

- يحدد التفاصيل المحددة فى نصوص معلوماتية قصيرة عن وظائف الحيوانات.

- use the Present Simple and Present Continuous accurately.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط والمستمر بدقة.

Writing:

- write a short descriptive paragraph about animal helpers using unit vocabulary.

- يكتب فقرة وصفية قصيرة عن الحيوانات المساعدة مستخدمًا مفردات الوحدة.

- use Present Simple to describe habits and jobs.

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط لوصف العادات والوظائف.

- use Present Continuous for actions happening now.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للأفعال التى تحدث الآن.



Lesson 1

How Animals Help Us



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



police dogs
الكلاب البوليسية



guide dogs
الكلاب المُرشدة



dolphins
دلافين



horses
خيول

Extra vocabulary

real (adj)	حقيقي	job	وظيفة	brave (adj)	شجاع
smart (adj)	ذكي	officer	ضابط شرطة	lost people	أشخاص مفقودون
criminals	مجرمون	far away	بعيدًا	blind people	أشخاص مكفوفون
street	شارع	calm (adj)	هادئ	careful (adj)	حريص

Expressions and Phrases

Really?	حقًا؟	Well	حسنًا
That's amazing!	هذا رائع!	move around	يتحرك / يتجول
without getting hurt	دون أن يتأذى	What about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟
feel much better	يشعر بتحسن كبير	in danger	في خطر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
smell	يشمَّ	smelled	يعبّر
help	يساعد	helped	يمشي
		walk	walked
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
find	يجد	found	يملك
spend	يقضى	spent	صنع
		make	made



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Teacher

Did you know that some animals have real jobs, just like people do?

هل تعلم أن بعض الحيوانات لديها وظائف حقيقية مثل البشر؟

Really? What kind of jobs do they do?

حقًا؟ ما نوع الوظائف التي يقومون بها؟



Student



Teacher

Well, police dogs are very brave and smart. They help officers find lost people and catch criminals, using their strong noses to smell things from far away.

حسنًا، الكلاب البوليسية شجاعة وذكية جدًا. إنها تساعد الضباط في العثور على الأشخاص المفقودين والقبض على المجرمين، باستخدام أنوفها القوية لشم الأشياء من مسافات بعيدة.

That's amazing! Do other dogs have jobs too?

هذا رائع! هل هناك كلاب أخرى لها وظائف أيضًا؟



Student



Teacher

Yes, some guide dogs are for blind people. They help them walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt. They are very calm and careful.

نعم، بعض الكلاب المرشدة تُخصّص للمكفوفين. إنها تساعدهم على المشي بأمان، وعبور الشوارع، والتحرك دون أن يتعرضوا للأذى. وهي كلاب هادئة وحذرة جدًا.

What about other animals?

وماذا عن الحيوانات الأخرى؟



Student



Teacher

Horses help people feel calm and happy. Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or scared feel much better.

الخيول تساعد الناس على الشعور بالهدوء والسعادة. وقضاء الوقت معها يمكن أن يجعل الشخص الحزين أو الخائف يشعر بتحسن كبير.

Are there any animals that help in the water?

هل هناك حيوانات تساعد في الماء؟



Student



Teacher

Yes, in some countries, rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea. These animals show us that helping others is a very special job.

نعم، في بعض البلدان، تقوم الدلافين المُنقِذة بمساعدة الأشخاص المعرضين للخطر في البحر. هذه الحيوانات تُظهر لنا أن مساعدة الآخرين هي وظيفة مميزة جدًا.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Some animals have real jobs, just like people do. - بعض الحيوانات لديها وظائف حقيقية مثل البشر.
- ✓ Police dogs are brave and smart. - الكلاب البوليسية شجاعة وذكية.
- ✓ They help officers find lost people and catch criminals. - إنها تساعد الضباط في العثور على الأشخاص المفقودين والقبض على المجرمين.
- ✓ Some guide dogs help blind people walk safely and move around without getting hurt. - بعض الكلاب المرشدة تساعد المكفوفين على المشي بأمان والتحرك دون أن يتعرضوا للأذى.
- ✓ Horses help people feel calm and happy. - الخيول تساعد الناس على الشعور بالهدوء والسعادة.
- ✓ Rescue dolphins help people in danger in the sea. - دلافين الإنقاذ تساعد الأشخاص الذين في خطر داخل البحر.
- ✓ These animals show us that helping others is a very special job. - هذه الحيوانات تُظهر أن مساعدة الآخرين وظيفة مميزة جدًا.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① Some (guide dogs – dolphins – penguins – snakes) help blind people walk safely.
- ② Police dogs use their strong (ears – noses – tails – eyes) to smell things from far away.
- ③ Guide dogs help blind people cross (rivers – streets – mountains – forests) safely.
- ④ Horses help people feel (angry – tired – calm – hungry).
- ⑤ A (police dog – guide dog – dolphin – horse) helps officers find lost people and catch criminals.

2. Read again and answer: SE

- ① What special ability do police dogs use to help officers?

.....

- ② How do guide dogs help blind people?

.....

- ③ How do horses help people feel?

.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Police dogs help officers find lost people and catch
a) students b) criminals c) teachers d) blind people
- 2 Horses make people who are sad or scared feel much
a) better b) colder c) older d) hotter
- 3 Rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the
a) park b) forest c) mountains d) sea
- 4 Some animals have just like people.
a) real jobs b) long tails c) tall towers d) fast legs
- 5 Guide dogs help people walk and cross streets safely.
a) bad b) blind c) rich d) fast
- 6 Animals show us that helping others is a very job.
a) dangerous b) boring c) special d) easy
- 7 Police dogs are very brave and
a) lazy b) sleepy c) smart d) slow
- 8 Guide dogs are very and careful when they help people.
a) calm b) bad c) noisy d) slow

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Guide – Police – Horses – brave – Rescue

In many countries, animals help people in different ways. (1) dogs can help catch criminals and keep people safe. (2) dogs help blind people cross streets carefully. (3) dolphins save people in the sea when they are in danger. These animals do (4) and helpful jobs.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

There are many animals that can help people in many ways. Some animals work on farms. Cows give us fresh milk, and sheep give us wool to make clothes. Police dogs are very brave and smart. They help officers catch criminals and find lost people. Some guide dogs help blind people walk safely and cross streets without getting hurt. Horses help people feel calm and happy. Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or scared feel much better. In some countries, rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea. These animals show us that helping others is a very special job.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sheep give us to make clothes.
a) milk b) wool c) eggs d) meat
- 2 Police dogs help officers lost people.
a) find b) hide c) feed d) ride

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How do guide dogs help blind people?

.....

- 4 How do horses help people?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 do – guide – What – do – dogs?

.....

- 2 dogs – Why – need – police – do – officers?

.....

- 3 are – friendly – and – smart – animals – Dolphins.

.....

- 4 help – find – They – people – officers – lost. Super Question ?

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 they are calm and careful

.....

- 2 do guide dogs cross streets safely

.....

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“The smartest animal you know”

“What is the smartest animal you know? – What makes this animal special to you?
– Where does this animal live?”

.....

.....

.....

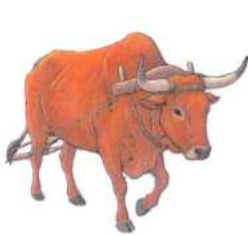
.....



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



water buffalo

جاموس الماء



donkey

حمار



pigeon

حمامة



falcon

صقر



gecko

أبو بريص
«سحلية صغيرة»



scarab beetle

خنفساء الجعران

Extra vocabulary

ploughs	محاريث	fields	حقول	soil	تربة
crops	محاصيل	loads	أحمال	villages	قرى
containers	أوعية / حاويات	supplies	مستلزمات	narrow streets	شوارع ضيقة
ripe (adj)	ناضج	dates	بلح/تمر	routes	طرق / مسارات
messengers	رسل	insects	حشرات	roles	أدوار

Expressions and Phrases

at this moment	في هذه اللحظة	help each other	يساعد بعضهم بعضًا
carry notes and letters	يحمل الملاحظات والرسائل	fly over a field	يطير فوق الحقل
during the evening	أثناء المساء	break down waste	يحلل الفضلات
make the earth better	يجعل الأرض أفضل	work together	يعمل معًا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs				أفعال منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
prepare	يُحضّر	prepared		plant	يزرع	planted	
pull	يجزّ / يسحب	pulled		transport	ينقل	transported	
hunt	يصطاد	hunted		damage	يُتلف / يضر	damaged	
Irregular verbs				أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present		Past		Present		Past	
know	يعرف	knew		grow	ينمو	grew	

Animal Helpers

مساعدو الحيوانات



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

How do animals help people in Egypt?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

In Egypt, many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives. On farms, strong **water buffaloes**⁽¹⁾ pull **ploughs**⁽²⁾ through the **fields**⁽³⁾. Right now, a farmer is working with his water buffalo to prepare the soil for planting crops.

Donkeys carry **heavy loads**⁽⁴⁾ through villages and to markets. They transport crops, **water containers**⁽⁵⁾, and supplies through narrow streets. At this moment, a donkey is probably walking to the market with baskets full of ripe dates. The donkeys know their **routes**⁽⁶⁾ very well.

Pigeons⁽⁷⁾ have an important job as **messengers**⁽⁸⁾. They carry notes and letters between different places.

Falcons⁽⁹⁾ help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops. You might see a falcon flying over a field, looking for rats to catch. These birds fly high in the sky.

In homes, **geckos**⁽¹⁰⁾ climb on walls and eat insects. They are most active during the evening.

Scarab beetles⁽¹¹⁾ work in the soil. They break down waste and help make the earth better for growing plants. All these animals — water buffaloes, donkeys, pigeons, falcons, geckos, and scarab beetles — play special roles in our life.

They show how people and animals can work together and help each other in many useful ways.

(1) جواميس الماء

(2) محاريث

(3) حقول

(4) أحمال ثقيلة

(5) أوعية المياه

(6) مسارات

(7) حمام

(8) رسل

(9) صقور

(10) أبو بريص

(11) خنافس الجعران

في مصر، تعمل الكثير من الحيوانات بجد لتساعد الناس في حياتهم اليومية. في المزارع، يقوم جواميس الماء القوي بسحب المحاريث في الحقول. الآن، يعمل فلاح مع جاموسه لإجهز الأرض لزراعة المحاصيل.

تحمل الحمير الأحمال الثقيلة في القرى وإلى الأسواق. تنقل المحاصيل وجوزات الماء والأعراض في الشوارع الضيقة. في هذا الوقت، ربما يمشي حمار إلى السوق يحمل سلالاً ممتلئة بالبلح الناضج. الحمير تعرف طريقها جيداً.

أما الحمام، فله عمل مهم كرسول. يحمل الرسائل والملاحظات بين أماكن مختلفة. تساعد الصقور الفلاحين بصيد الحيوانات الصغيرة التي تُلف المحاصيل. قد ترى صقراً يطير فوق الحقول يبحث عن الفئران ليمسكها. هذه الطيور تطير عاليًا في السماء.

في البيوت، يتسلق أبو بريص (الوزغ) الجدران ويأكل الحشرات، وهو يكون نشيطاً أكثر في المساء. تعمل خنافس الجعران في التربة. فهي تُحلل الفضلات وتساعد على جعل الأرض أفضل لزراعة النباتات. كل هذه الحيوانات — الجاموس، الحمير، الحمام، الصقور، أبو بريص، وخنافس الجعران — لها أدوار خاصة في حياتنا. إنها تُظهر كيف يمكن للناس والحيوانات أن يعملوا معًا ويساعدوا بعضهم في طرق مفيدة كثيرة.

Definitions	falcon	a fast bird that hunts animals in fields	طائر سريع يصطاد الحيوانات في الحقول
	scarab beetle	an insect that helps make soil better for plants	حشرة تساعد على تحسين التربة للنباتات
	donkey	a hardworking animal that carries heavy loads	حيوان مجتهد يحمل الأحمال الثقيلة
	gecko	a small lizard that eats insects inside houses	سحلية صغيرة تأكل الحشرات داخل المنازل
	pigeon	a bird that can find its way home from far away	طائر يستطيع إيجاد طريقه للعودة من أماكن بعيدة
	water buffalo	a strong animal that pulls ploughs on farms	حيوان قوى يجر المحاريث في المزارع



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ In Egypt, many animals help people in their daily lives.
- في مصر، تساعد العديد من الحيوانات الناس في حياتهم اليومية.
- ✓ Water buffaloes pull ploughs and help farmers on the farms.
- تسحب الجواميس المحاريث وتساعد الفلاحين في الحقول.
- ✓ Donkeys carry heavy loads to the market and through villages.
- تحمل الحمير الأشياء الثقيلة إلى السوق وعبر القرى.
- ✓ Pigeons carry messages and letters between different places.
- يحمل الحمام الرسائل والملاحظات بين أماكن مختلفة.
- ✓ Falcons hunt small animals that damage crops.
- تصطاد الصقور الحيوانات الصغيرة التي تضر المحاصيل.
- ✓ Geckos climb on walls and eat insects in houses.
- يتسلق أبو بريص الجدران ويأكل الحشرات في البيوت.
- ✓ Scarab beetles break down waste and help make the earth better for growing plants.
- تحلل خنافس الجعران الفضلات وتساعد على جعل الأرض أفضل لزراعة النباتات.
- ✓ People and animals work together and help each other.
- يعمل الناس والحيوانات معًا ويساعد بعضهم بعضًا.

✓ Checkpoint Read again and answer:



① What is the main job of water buffaloes?

.....

② What do pigeons help people do?

.....

③ How do geckos help people?

.....

Language in Use

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage:

الاستخدام:

- We use the "Present Simple" to talk about things that are always true, or that happen regularly like (habits, facts, and jobs).

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (Present Simple) للحديث عن الأشياء التي تكون دائماً صحيحة أو تحدث بانتظام مثل (العادات، والحقائق، والوظائف).

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Donkeys **carry** things every day. (Habit/Job) الحمير تحمل الأشياء كل يوم.

e.g. Water buffaloes **pull** ploughs. (Job) جاموس الماء يسحب المحاريث.

He/ She/ It + (inf) + s/ es/ ies ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. A falcon **hunts** small animals. (Fact) الصقر يصطاد الحيوانات الصغيرة.

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

(drink – drinks)

e.g. Eslam **drinks** coffee every morning.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ ss/sh/ch/o/x/z

يضاف لها (es):

(brush – brushes)

e.g. She **brushes** her teeth every day.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف

ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ies):

(study – studies)

e.g. He **studies** English every day.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I/ We/ They/ You + **don't** + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Falcons **don't hunt** at night.

He/ She/ It + **doesn't** + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. A pigeon **doesn't carry** letters in most places today.



Got it:

Salma (like) healthy food.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (likes) لأن (Salma) فاعل مفرد وبالتالي يجب أن يكون الفعل مضافاً إليه (s).

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	... الفعل فى المصدر (inf)?
	Does	he/ she/ it	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do/ does.
	No,		don't/ doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you go to the club?

B: Yes, I do.

e.g. A: Does Nada sleep early?

B: No, she doesn't.

Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they	... الفعل فى المصدر (inf)?
	does	he/ she/ it	

e.g. A: Where do you live?

B: I live in Cairo.



Got it:

Do farmers (using) donkeys for transport?

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (use) لأن السؤال فى زمن المضارع البسيط فالفعل (Do) يأتى بعده الفعل فى المصدر.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

أبداً never / نادراً rarely / أحياناً sometimes / غالباً often / عادةً usually / دائماً always

كل (يوم / أسبوع / صيف / ...) (day – week – summer – ...) كل every

in (فى الصباح / بعد الظهر / فى الصيف / فى الشتاء) (the morning – the afternoon – summer – winter)

at night (فى المساء) – on (Sunday – Thursday – ...) (يوم الأحد / يوم الخميس / ...)

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 Laila (drink – drinks – drinking – to drink) milk every morning.
- 2 My friends usually (play – plays – playing – played) basketball after school.
- 3 What (is – are – do – does) Amira and Hadeer like to play?
- 4 Does your sister (watches – watch – watching – watched) cartoons every evening?

The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage:

الاستخدام:

We use the "Present Continuous" to talk about actions that are happening now.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر (Present Continuous) للحديث عن الأفعال التي تحدث الآن.

e.g. The donkey **is carrying** a heavy load at the moment.

الحمار يحمل حمولة ثقيلة في هذه اللحظة .

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + **am / is / are** + (inf) + **ing**

Subject	الفاعل	Verb to be	
I		am	ing. + الفعل في المصدر (inf)
He/ She/ It		is	
We/ They/ You		are	

e.g. The children **are playing** football now.

e.g. She **is watching** TV at the moment.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + **am / is / are (not)** + (inf) + **ing**

Subject	الفاعل	Verb to be	
I		am not	ing. + الفعل في المصدر (inf)
He/ She/ It		is not = isn't	
We/ They/ You		are not = aren't	

e.g. I **am not using** my phone right now.

e.g. The pigeons **aren't flying** at the moment.



Got it:

Look! They are (**draw**) a nice picture.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**drawing**) لأن بعد الفعل (are) نضيف للفعل الأساسي (**ing**).

Yes/ No Question:

السؤال بـ(هل):

Am/ Is/ Are + subject + (inf) + **ing** ...?

e.g. A: **Is** Sara **watching** TV now?

B: **Yes**, she **is**.

e.g. A: **Are** your cousins **studying** at home?

B: **No**, they **aren't**.

Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word + **am/ is/ are** + subject + (inf) الفعل في المصدر **ing ...?**

e.g. A: What **is** he **doing** now?
B: He **is eating** lunch.

e.g. A: Where **are** you **playing**?
B: We **are playing** in the park.



Got it:

What are you (do) today, Ola?

• (today) من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع المستمر، ومع وجود (are) تكون الإجابة (doing).



Notes

• ملاحظات على إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل:

١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) فتُحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

e.g. smile → smiling move → moving

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك (vowel + consonant)، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة الـ (ing):

e.g. run → running swim → swimming

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie)، يتم حذفهما وتُستبدل بـ (y) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

e.g. tie → tying lie → lying

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

انظروا! Look! / في هذه اللحظة at the present – at the moment – right now / الآن now

اليوم today / ما زال still / هذا + (وقت) (time) + this / استمع! Listen!

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① Look! Sara is (reading – are reading – reads – read) a story.
- ② The boys (is playing – are playing – play – playing) football in the park now.
- ③ I (am watching – is watching – are watching – watch) my favorite cartoon.
- ④ Where (is – are – be – am) they going now?

Quick Practice on the Present Simple Tense & the Present Continuous Tense

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Police dogs (helping) officers every day.
- 2 Are water buffaloes (works) in the fields now?
- 3 Donkeys (carries) heavy loads on Mondays at the market.
- 4 The farmer (works) with his water buffalo at the moment.
- 5 Falcons usually (flying) over the fields to hunt small animals.
- 6 What does a scarab beetle (did)?
- 7 Geckos (not climb) on the wall now.
- 8 Who is (take) care of the animals today?
- 9 The donkey (doesn't) walking to the market today.
- 10 Look! The dolphin (are rescue) a person in the sea!
- 11 Listen! The horses (not run) across the field.
- 12 (Are) pigeons carry messages every day?
- 13 Guide dogs (is helping) blind people right now.
- 14 Does the farmer (using) animals to help him?
- 15 Scarab beetles (help always) the soil stay healthy.

Super Question ?

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 every day – How – people – animals – do – help?

.....

- 2 are – now – English – studying – We – right.

.....

- 3 like – Asmaa – doesn't – weather – cold.

.....

- 4 Is – today – she – book – reading – her?

.....

- 5 teacher – is – to – talking – the – Who?

.....



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Scarab beetles make the soil better. ()
- 2 Donkeys and pigeons are animals that help people. ()
- 3 The scarab beetle does nothing to help plants. ()
- 4 Animals and people can help each other. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The water buffalo helps farmers pull in the fields.
a) toys b) ploughs c) chairs d) ropes
- 2 A donkey can carry heavy on its back for people.
a) toys b) animals c) loads d) clothes
- 3 Long ago, people used to send letters.
a) pigeons b) donkeys c) horses d) dogs
- 4 A falcon flies very fast to catch its
a) friends b) food c) net d) trainer
- 5 The scarab beetle was an important in ancient Egypt.
a) snake b) bird c) fish d) insect
- 6 People know fruit is ready to eat when it is
a) small b) green c) ripe d) sour

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pigeons – falcon – hunting – high – fields

Many birds are helpful in nature. The (1) is a strong and fast bird. It flies high above the (2), looking for food. They are great at (3) small animals like rats. These birds fly (4) in the sky.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Do you (liking) English class?
- 2 My sister usually (help) my mother.
- 3 The children (is) swimming in the pool.
- 4 I am (have) my lunch now.
- 5 Eslam (drinking) tea at the moment.
- 6 Mona (eating) salad every day.
- 7 Falcons (fly) over the fields right now. **SB**
-  8 Why (is) they running so fast?
- 9 A gecko (eat) small insects every evening.
- 10 The rat isn't (eat) seeds at the moment.
- 11 He (not watch) TV at night.
- 12 The lions (not sleep) now.
- 13 He doesn't (likes) eating chocolate.
- 14 Look! The cat (plays) with a ball.
- 15 We (don't play) outside today.

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 hard – In – animals – Egypt, – work – many.
.....
-  2 donkeys – know – well – routes – their – The.
.....
- 3 people – What – pigeons – do – to help – do? **Super Question ?**
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 geckos can walk on walls
.....
-  2 how does the scarab beetle help
.....



Lesson 3 Farm Friends



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main Vocabulary



cows
أبقار



sheep
أغنام



guard dogs
كلاب الحراسة

Extra vocabulary

fresh (adj.)	طازج	grass	عشب	thick (adj.)	كثيف / سميك
wool	صوف	workers	عمال	sweaters	سترات صوفية
blankets	بطاطين	barn	حظيرة	mice	فئران
grain	حبوب	carts	عربات	care	رعاية

Expressions and Phrases

watch over	يراقب / يحرس	keep them safe	يقيهم في أمان	in many ways	بطرق عديدة
------------	--------------	----------------	---------------	--------------	------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة					
Present		Past		Present	
visit	يزور	visited		milk	يحب
guard	يحرس	guarded		explain	يشرح
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة					
Present		Past		Present	
cut	يقطع	cut		make	يصنع
lay	يبيض	laid		catch	يمسك

Definitions

farmer	a person who grows food and raises animals	شخص يزرع الطعام ويربي الحيوانات
field	an area of land with grass for animals	مساحة من الأرض بها عشب للحيوانات
sheep	a farm animal that gives us thick wool to make clothes	حيوان مزرعة يعطينا صوفًا كثيفًا لصنع الملابس
guard dog	an animal that protects others	حيوان يحمي الآخرين

A Day on the Farm

يوم في المزرعة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What animals can you see on the farm?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Omar and his family are visiting his uncle's farm today. They see many animal helpers working hard. The cows are in the field. "Look! The farmer is milking a cow now," says Omar happily. Cows give us **fresh**⁽¹⁾ milk every day for drinking and making cheese.



They walk to another field where **sheep**⁽²⁾ are eating **grass**⁽³⁾. The sheep have **thick**⁽⁴⁾, warm **wool**⁽⁵⁾ that grows all year. Once a year, workers carefully cut the wool to make **sweaters**⁽⁶⁾ and **blankets**⁽⁷⁾. A smart dog is watching over the sheep carefully. The dog's job is to guard the sheep. Right now, the dog is running around the sheep to keep them safe.

Near the **barn**⁽⁸⁾, chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast.

The family sees a cat sleeping in the sun. The cat helps by catching mice that might eat the **grain**⁽⁹⁾. Omar's uncle explains, "We take good care of all our animals, and they take care of us too."

He shows Omar how the horses help pull carts around the farm. Donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads. "We must always be kind to our animal helpers," the uncle says gently.

Omar learns that farm animals are hard workers who help people in many ways.

- | | |
|-----|--------|
| (1) | طازج |
| (2) | أغنام |
| (3) | حشائش |
| (4) | كثيف |
| (5) | صوف |
| (6) | سترات |
| (7) | بطاطين |
| (8) | حظيرة |
| (9) | حبوب |

عمر وعائلته يزورون مزرعة عمه اليوم. يرون العديد من الحيوانات التي تساعد الناس وتعمل بجد. الأبقار في الحقل. قال عمر بسعادة: «انظر! الفلاح يحلب بقرة الآن». الأبقار تعطينا حليبًا طازجًا كل يوم لنشربه ونصنع منه الجبن. ثم يسيرون إلى حقل آخر حيث الأغنام تأكل العشب. للأغنام صوف كثيف ودافئ ينمو طوال العام. مرة واحدة في السنة، يقتص العمال الصوف بحذر ليصنعوا منه سترات وبطاطين. وهناك كلب ذكي يراقب الأغنام بحذر، وعمله هو حراستها. الآن، الكلب يجري حول الأغنام ليحافظ على سلامتها. قرب الحظيرة، تضع الدجاجات البيض كل صباح للإفطار. وترى العائلة قطعة نائمة في الشمس. تساعد القطعة بالإمسك بالفئران التي قد تأكل الحبوب. قال عمر: «نحن نعتني جيدًا بجميع حيواناتنا، وهي تعتني بنا أيضًا». وأرى عمر كيف تساعد الخيول في جر العربات في المزرعة. الحمير قوية ويمكنها حمل الأحمال الثقيلة. قال العم بلطف: «يجب أن تكون دائمًا لطفاء مع الحيوانات التي تساعدنا». تعلم عمر أن حيوانات المزرعة عمال مجتهدون يساعدون الناس بطرق كثيرة.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Omar and his family are visiting his uncle's farm today. - عمر وأسرته يزورون مزرعة عمه اليوم.
- ✓ They see many animal helpers working hard. - يرون العديد من الحيوانات المساعدة تعمل بجد.
- ✓ The farmer is milking a cow now. - المزارع يحلب بقرة الآن.
- ✓ Cows give us fresh milk every day. - الأبقار تعطينا حليبًا طازجًا كل يوم.
- ✓ Sheep are eating grass in the field. - الأغنام تأكل العشب في الحقل.
- ✓ A smart dog is watching over the sheep. - كلب ذكي يراقب الأغنام.
- ✓ Chickens lay eggs every morning. - الدجاج يبيض كل صباح.
- ✓ Omar learns that farm animals help people in many ways.

- يتعلم عمر أن حيوانات المزرعة تساعد الناس بطرق عديدة.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Write T (True) or F (False):



- 1 Omar is visiting a factory today. ()
- 2 Cows give us milk. ()
- 3 The dog is sleeping near the sheep now. ()
- 4 We get wool from sheep. ()
- 5 Omar thinks the animals are lazy. ()

2. Fill in the blanks using words from the box: SB

farmer – cows – sheep – guards

Omar is visiting his uncle, the (1)..... on the farm. He sees (2)..... that give us milk. He also sees (3)..... that give us wool. A dog (4)..... the animals on the farm.

3. Match the words to their meanings:

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| 1 farmer | a. an area of land with grass for animals |
| 2 field | b. a person who grows food and raises animals |
| 3 sheep | c. an animal that protects others |
| 4 guard dog | d. a farm animal that gives us thick wool to make clothes |

Word Building Skills

Words with the suffixes (-er / -or / -ist)



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

A **suffix** is a small part we add at the end of a word to make a new word.

اللاحقة (suffix) هي جزء صغير نضيفه في نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

It can change the meaning or the job of the word.

يمكن أن تتغير معنى الكلمة أو وظيفتها في الجملة.

"-er"

- **er:** Sounds like /ər/ at the end.

Example:

Farmer (say "farm" strong, "er" soft).

"-or"

- **or:** Also sounds like /ər/. The strong part is before «-or».

Example:

Visitor (say "vis" strong, "it-or" soft).

"-ist"

- **ist:** Sounds like /ɪst/ at the end.

Example:

Specialist (say "spe" strong, "cial-ist" quickly).



Note

When we add "-er, -or, or -ist," the new word usually means a person who does something.

عندما نضيف "-er، -or، أو -ist"، فإن الكلمة الجديدة تعني عادةً الشخص الذي يفعل شيئاً ما.

-er	-or	-ist
farmer فلاح / مزارع	visitor زائر	specialist متخصص
helper مساعد	doctor طبيب	scientist عالم
teacher معلم	inventor مخترع	

✓ Checkpoint 1. Clap the stressed syllable:

SB

Say each word aloud and clap for the stressed syllable:

- ① farmer ② doctor ③ scientist ④ helper ⑤ inventor

2. Fill in the blanks with the right ending. Use -er, -or, or -ist to complete the word:

- ① farm
 ② visit
 ③ special
 ④ help
 ⑤ teach



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Omar sees sheep eating grass in the
 a) house b) car c) field d) shop
- 2 Farmers use milk for and butter.
 a) eating bread b) making cheese
 c) cooking rice d) feeding birds
- 3 Sheep give us wool to make
 a) swings b) shoes c) sweaters d) plates
- 4 Guard dogs are over the animals at night.
 a) watching b) cleaning c) cutting d) feeding
- 5 The cows and horses sleep in the at night.
 a) school b) house c) park d) barn
- 6 Chickens eggs every morning.
 a) lay b) pay c) wash d) play
- 7 Donkeys and horses carts filled with grain.
 a) clean b) pull c) cry d) sit
- 8 People use to make warm blankets.
 a) plastic b) metal c) wood d) wool

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

safe – animals – scare – guard – job

Some dogs help farmers take care of their animals. A (1)..... dog is watching over the sheep carefully. The dog's (2)..... is to guard the sheep. Right now, the dog is running around the sheep to keep them (3)..... I think dogs are brave and helpful (4).....

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Farmers take care of many animals on the farm. Cows give milk to make cheese and butter. Chickens lay eggs every morning. Sheep give us wool to make warm clothes. Donkeys and horses help farmers pull carts and carry heavy things. Guard dogs watch over the animals at night to keep them safe. Farmers feed their animals with grain and water. Life on the farm is busy, but full of love and care.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Chickens give people
 a) milk b) eggs c) wool d) butter
- 2 Farmers feed their animals with
 a) toys b) grain c) fish d) sweets

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do cows give us?

- 4 How do dogs help on the farm?

- 5 What is life on the farm like?

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 help – How – do – the horses – farmers?

- 2 lay – every morning – eggs – Chickens.

- 3 animals – Why – should – we – kind – be – to?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Does Ahmed show all the horses

- 2 donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“A visit to the farm”



What animals did you see there? – What did the farmer do? – What did you like most?

.....

.....

.....



Lessons 4 and 5

Writing About Animal Helpers



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

documentary	فيلم وثائقي	narrator	راوي
egrets	البلشونات (طيور بيضاء تعيش قرب الماء)	beak	منقار
hoppers	حشرات (جراد)	wildlife	الحياة البرية

Extra vocabulary

screen	شاشة	suddenly	فجأة	sharp (adj)	حاد
back	ظهر	flies	ذباب	chemicals	مبيدات / مواد كيميائية
feathers	ريش	hundreds	مئات	natural (adj)	طبيعي

Expressions and Phrases

work alongside water	يعمل بجانب الماء	stand on	يقف على
through water	عبر الماء	because of	بسبب
in a single day	في يوم واحد	easy to spot against	سهل رؤيته / اكتشافه بين

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
harm	harm <u>ed</u>	raid	raide <u>d</u>
bother	bother <u>ed</u>	mind	mind <u>ed</u>
appreciate	appreciate <u>d</u>	provide	provide <u>d</u>
Present	Past	Present	Past
stand	stood	eat	ate

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

The Farmer's Feathered Friend صديق الفلاح ذو الريش



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Do you usually see animals helping people?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

I am watching a **wildlife documentary** ⁽¹⁾ about animal helpers right now. The narrator says that **egrets** ⁽²⁾ help farmers by eating insects that **harm** ⁽³⁾ crops. On the screen, a white egret is standing in a field. Suddenly, the egret **raids quickly** ⁽⁴⁾ with its sharp **beak** ⁽⁵⁾. It is catching hoppers that eat the rice plants. Egrets have **long legs** ⁽⁶⁾ that help them walk through water. These birds often work alongside water buffaloes in the fields. They sometimes stand on the buffaloes' **backs** ⁽⁷⁾ to get a better view. The egret eats flies that **bother** ⁽⁸⁾ the buffalo, and the buffalo doesn't mind. Farmers don't need to use as many **chemicals** ⁽⁹⁾ because of these birds. This makes the food healthier for people to eat. Egrets can eat hundreds of insects in a single day. They fly to different fields to find their food. Their white feathers make them easy to spot against the green plants. Farmers appreciate these beautiful birds because they provide natural insect control.

- وثائق عن الحياة البرية (1)
طيور البلشونات (2)
يؤذي (3)
يهاجم بسرعة (4)
منقار (5)
أرجل طويلة (6)
ظهور (7)
يزعج (8)
مبيدات كيميائية (9)

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now.
- أنا أشاهد الآن فيلمًا وثائقيًا عن الحيوانات المساعدة.
- ✓ Egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops.
- طيور البلشون تساعد الفلاحين بأكل الحشرات التي تضر المحاصيل.
- ✓ Egrets have long legs that help them walk through water.
- للبلشونات أرجل طويلة تساعد على المشي في الماء.
- ✓ These birds often work alongside water buffaloes in the fields.
- هذه الطيور غالبًا تعمل جنبًا إلى جنب مع جواميس الماء في الحقول.
- ✓ Farmers don't need to use as many chemicals because of these birds.
- لا يحتاج الفلاحون لاستخدام الكثير من المبيدات الكيميائية بسبب هذه الطيور.
- ✓ Farmers appreciate these beautiful birds because they provide natural insect control.
- يقدر الفلاحون هذه الطيور الجميلة لأنها توفر مكافحة طبيعية للحشرات.

أنا أشاهد الآن فيلمًا وثائقيًا عن الحيوانات المساعدة. يقول الراوي إن طيور البلشون تساعد الفلاحين بأكل الحشرات التي تضر المحاصيل. على الشاشة، ترى بلشونًا أبيض واقفًا في الحقل. فجأة، يهاجم البلشون بسرعة بمنقاره الحاد، إنه يمسك الحشرات التي تأكل نباتات الأرز. للبلشون أرجل طويلة تساعد على المشي في الماء. غالبًا ما تعمل هذه الطيور جنبًا إلى جنب مع الجواميس في الحقول، أحيانًا يقفون على ظهور الجواميس ليحصلوا على رؤية أفضل. يأكل البلشون الذباب الذي يزعج الجاموس، والجاموس لا يمانع. لا يحتاج الفلاحون لاستخدام الكثير من المبيدات الكيميائية بسبب هذه الطيور. هذا يجعل الطعام أكثر صحة للناس ليأكلوه. يمكن للبلشون أن يأكل مئات الحشرات في يوم واحد. يطير إلى حقول مختلفة ليجد طعامه. ريشها الأبيض يجعل من السهل رؤيتها بين النباتات الخضراء. يقدر الفلاحون هذه الطيور الجميلة لأنها توفر مكافحة طبيعية للحشرات.



Tip!

Descriptive writing tips:

1 **Choose a topic:** Pick an animal helper.

نصائح للكتابة الوصفية:
اختر موضوعاً: اختر حيواناً مساعداً.

2 **Use strong adjectives:** sharp, patient, beautiful, natural.

استخدم صفات قوية: مثل حاد، صبور، جميل، طبيعي.

3 **Show, don't tell:** Instead of "The egret is helpful," write "The egret is catching harmful insects in the rice field."

اعرض ولا تخبر فقط: بدلاً من كتابة «البليشون مفيد»، اكتب «البليشون يمسك الحشرات الضارة في حقل الأرز».

4 **Use the correct tense:** Use Present Simple for habits/jobs and Present Continuous for what is happening now.

استخدم الزمن الصحيح: استخدم المضارع البسيط (Present Simple) للعادات والوظائف، والمضارع المستمر (Present Continuous) لما يحدث الآن.

5 **Organize your ideas:** Start with what you see, describe the job, and finish with your opinion.

نظم أفكارك: ابدأ بما تراه، ثم صف وظيفة الحيوان، وانته برأيك.

Imagine you are watching a show about an animal helper. Write a paragraph (30-40 words) describing what you see. Describe the animal's job and what it is doing now. 

Animal Facts:

.....

.....

.....

.....

Animal Habits:

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Egrets often on the buffaloes' backs.
a) swim b) stand c) study d) sing
- 2 Farmers do not want insects that crops.
a) harm b) water c) grow d) feed
- 3 The bird uses its long to catch food.
a) tail b) leg c) beak d) wing
- 4 Some farmers prefer not to use on their crops.
a) machines b) chemicals c) workers d) animals
- 5 We should how animals help people.
a) forget b) ignore c) stop d) appreciate
- 6 The teaches children about nature and animals.
a) carton b) documentary c) song d) dance
- 7 The spoke in a calm voice to make the story more interesting.
a) narrator b) writer c) dancer d) artist
- 8 Egrets eat that jump in the fields.
a) birds b) hoppers c) fruits d) seeds

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

beak – crops – farmers – hoppers – narrator

Egrets are beautiful white birds that live near water and farms. They have long legs and a sharp (1) to catch fish and insects. Egrets often stand on the buffaloes' backs to eat (2) and other insects. They help (3) by eating insects that harm (4) Egrets are calm, useful, and friendly birds.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egrets are white birds that live near farms and rivers. They help farmers by eating insects that harm plants. Egrets have long legs to walk in the water and sharp beaks to catch hoppers quickly. Sometimes, they stand on water buffaloes' backs to see better. They also eat flies that bother the buffaloes. Farmers like egrets because they keep the fields clean and healthy without using many chemicals. These birds are small helpers with a big job.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "bother" means making you feel
 a) upset b) happy c) scared d) excited
- 2 Egrets sometimes stand on backs to see better.
 a) cows' b) buffaloes' c) sheep's d) horses'

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do egrets eat?

- 4 What do egrets use to walk in the water?

- 5 Why do farmers like egrets?

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 insects – can – of – hundreds – Egrets – eat.

- 2 do – have – egrets – legs – long – Why?

- 3 They – crops – that – eat – harm – insects.

- 4 a wildlife – about – I am – animal – watching – helpers – documentary. Super Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 the egret raids quickly with its sharp beak

- 2 what is the egret catching with its beak

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"How birds help farmers"



What do the birds eat? - How does this help the crops? - Why do farmers like the birds?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 4

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

police dogs	الكلاب البوليسية	guide dogs	الكلاب المُرشدة
dolphins	دلافين	horses	الخيول
real	حقيقي	brave	شجاع
smart	ذكي	blind people	أشخاص مكفوفون
officer	ضابط شرطة	lost people	أشخاص مفقودون
job	وظيفة	far away	بعيدا

Lesson (2)

water buffalo	جاموس الماء	donkey	حمار
pigeon	حمامة	falcon	صقر
gecko	أبو بريص «سحلية صغيرة»	scarab beetle	خنفساء الجعران
ploughs	محاريث	field	حقول
soil	تربة	crops	محاصيل
containers	أوعية/ حاويات	ripe	ناضج
routes	طرق/ مسارات	insects	حشرات

Lesson (3)

cows	أبقار	sheep	أغنام
guard dogs	كلاب الحراسة	fresh	طازج
wool	صوف	grass	عشب
blankets	بطاطين	thick	كثيف/ سميك
grain	حبوب	sweaters	سترات صوفية
barn	حظيرة	carts	عربات
mice	فئران	watch over	يراقب/ يحرس

Lessons (4 and 5)

documentary	فيلم وثائقي	narrator	راوي
egrets	البلشونات (طيور بيضاء تعيش قرب الماء)	beak	منقار
hoppers	حشرات (جراد)	wildlife	الحياة البرية
flies	ذباب	chemicals	مبيدات/ مواد كيميائية
feathers	ريش	natural	طبيعي

Language in Use

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage:

الاستخدام:

- We use the "Present Simple" to talk about things that are always true, or that happen regularly.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر
e.g. Donkeys **carry** things every day. (Habit/Job) الحمار تحمل الأشياء كل يوم.

He/ She/ It + (inf) + s/ es/ ies ...
e.g. A falcon **hunts** small animals. (Fact) الصقر يصطاد الحيوانات الصغيرة.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I/We/ They/ You + don't + (inf) ... الفعل في المصدر
e.g. Falcons **don't hunt** at night.

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (inf) ...
e.g. A pigeon **doesn't carry** letters in most places today.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf) ...? الفعل في المصدر
	Does	he/ she/ it	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do/ does.
	No,		don't/ doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you go to the club?

B: Yes, I do.

e.g. A: Does Nour sleep early?

B: No, she doesn't.

Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word + do/does + subject (الفاعل) + (inf)?

e.g. A: Where do you live?

B: I live in Cairo.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

always, usually, often, sometimes, never, every day, on Mondays

The Present Continuous Tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage:

الاستخدام:

We use the "Present Continuous" to talk about actions that are happening at this moment.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject الفاعل	Verb to be	
I	am	(inf) + الفعل في المصدر
He/ She/ It	is	
We/ They/ You	are	

e.g. The children are playing football now.

e.g. She is watching TV at the moment.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject الفاعل	Verb to be	
I	am not	(inf) + الفعل في المصدر
He/ She/ It	is not = isn't	
We/ They/ You	are not = aren't	

e.g. I am not using my phone right now.

Yes/ No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Am/ Is/ Are + subject + (inf) ...? الفعل في المصدر + ing

e.g. A: Is Sara watching TV now?

B: Yes, she is.

e.g. A: Are your cousins studying at home?

B: No, they aren't.

Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word + am/ is/ are + subject + (inf) ...? الفعل في المصدر + ing

e.g. A: What is he doing now?

B: He is eating lunch.

e.g. A: Where are you playing?

B: We are playing in the park.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

now, right now, at the moment, today, Look! Listen!

Unit 4

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية

الكلمة بالإنجليزية

police dogs	.....	.....	كلاب الإرشاد
dolphins	.....	.....	الخيول
smart	.....	.....	شجاع
lost people	.....	.....	مجرمين
job	.....	.....	ضابط شرطة

Lesson 2

donkey	.....	.....	محارث
falcon	.....	.....	حمامة
scarab beetle	.....	.....	ناضج
insects	.....	.....	أبو بريص
fields	.....	.....	محاصيل

Lesson 3

guard dogs	.....	.....	طانج
sheep	.....	.....	عربات
cows	.....	.....	صوف
grass	.....	.....	بطاطين
thick	.....	.....	حظيرة
grain	.....	.....	سترات صوفية

Lessons 4 & 5

narrator	.....	.....	الحياة البرية
feathers	.....	.....	طيور البلشون
chemicals	.....	.....	منقار
sharp	.....	.....	حشرات (جراد)
back	.....	.....	فيلم وثائقي

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present

Past

Present

Past

.....	appreciated	transport	.....
catch	.....	.....	grew
.....	felt	.....	pulled
find	.....	lay	.....
.....	crossed	.....	guarded

”لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“.

Unit 4 | WRITING TIME

تجميعه لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "Rescue dolphins"

- Write what rescue dolphins are.
- Say what they do.
- Explain how they help.
- Describe them with adjectives.

اكتب ما هي الدلافين المنقذة.

اذكر ما الذي تفعله.

اشرح كيف تساعد.

صفها باستخدام الصفات.

"Rescue dolphins"

Rescue dolphins are amazing animals. They help save people who are lost or in danger in the sea. These dolphins are trained to find swimmers and bring them to safety. They are brave, smart, and kind helpers in the sea. People love these dolphins because they work hard. Dolphins can swim very fast to reach people quickly.

How to Write About "A visit to the farm"

- Write where you went.
- Say what you saw.
- Describe what you did.
- Say how you felt.

اكتب إلى أين ذهبت.

اذكر ما الذي رأيته.

صف ما الذي فعلته.

اذكر شعورك.

"A visit to the farm"

I visited a farm last weekend. I saw cows, sheep, and chickens. I walked around the fields and saw horses running. I drank fresh milk from the cow. I saw a dog guarding the sheep. I helped feed the animals and picked some vegetables. I was very happy and excited because I learned many new things about farm life.

1 Match the words to their meanings:

1 falcon	a) a small lizard that eats insects inside houses
2 scarab beetle	b) a strong animal that pulls ploughs on farms
3 donkey	c) a fast bird that hunts animals in fields
4 gecko	d) an insect that helps make soil better for plants
5 pigeon	e) a hardworking animal that carries heavy loads
6 water buffalo	f) a bird that can find its way home from far away

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Water buffaloes (pull / are pulling) ploughs on Egyptian farms.
- 2 Look! The pigeon (carries / is carrying) a message right now.
- 3 Geckos (eat / are eating) insects in homes.
- 4 Right now, the scarab beetle (works / is working) in the soil.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the correct tense (Present Simple or Present Continuous)

- 1 The farmer work with his buffalo now.
.....
- 2 Donkeys is carrying heavy baskets to the market.
.....
- 3 Falcons fly over the fields right now.
.....
- 4 A gecko eat mosquitoes every evening.
.....
- 5 Pigeons are carry messages between villages.
.....

4 Choose the correct suffix (- er, - or, -ist) to complete the words:

- 1 My uncle is a farm who plants wheat and corn.
- 2 She wants to be a scient and discover new things.
- 3 The visit asked for directions to the ancient temple.
- 4 The act performed his role in the play perfectly.
- 5 He is a great paint whose artwork is famous worldwide.



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1 Egrets help farmers by eating insects. (.....) 2
 2 Egrets never walk near water buffaloes. (.....)
 3 Egrets sometimes stand on buffaloes' backs. (.....)
 4 These birds help farmers grow healthy plants with many chemicals. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Farmers use water buffaloes to pull the through the mud.
 a) table b) ploughs c) box d) door
 2 People know fruit is ready to eat when it is
 a) small b) green c) ripe d) sour
 3 They in the garden now.
 a) play b) playing c) plays d) are playing
 4 My mother breakfast every morning.
 a) cook b) cooks c) cooking d) cooked

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

safe – sheep – Cows – sweaters – horses

On the farm, cows, sheep, and dogs all have important jobs. (1) give milk for people to drink. Sheep have thick wool that workers use to make (2) and blankets. A guard dog watches over the (3) carefully and keeps them (4) from danger.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Dogs are amazing helpers in many ways. Police dogs work with officers to find lost people and catch criminals using their strong sense of smell. They are brave and smart. Guard dogs protect homes, farms, and animals from danger. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt. These dogs are calm, gentle, and very well-trained. All these dogs work hard to make people's lives easier and safer every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about ".....".
 a) wild animals in the forest b) how dogs help people
 c) pets playing at home d) farm animals and birds
- 2 Police dogs work with
 a) teachers b) officers c) farmers d) doctors

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How can police dogs help officers?

- 4 What kind of dogs protect animals from danger?

- 5 What do guide dogs help blind people do?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Farmers (is feeding) the chickens every morning.
- 2 The horse (pull) the cart right now.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 do – help – horses – feel – people – What?

- 2 transport – containers – crops – They – water – and.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what do pigeons help people do
- 2 a falcon hunts small animals

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"How animals help people"

loads – fields – crops





Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 Omar sees many helpful animals on his uncle's farm.
- 2 Cows give us milk.
- 3 A dog guards the sheep.
- 4 Omar learns that animals do not help people.

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

(.....)

(.....)

(.....)

(.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 A person who grows food and raises animals is called a
a) teacher b) farmer c) doctor d) driver
- 2 The egret the field to catch insects.
a) rides b) writes c) reads d) raids
- 3 The cat under the table right now.
a) sleep b) sleeps c) is sleeping d) slept
- 4 Does she eating pizza?
a) likes b) like c) liked d) liking

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

sheep – chemicals – bother – healthy – plants

Farmers work hard to protect their crops from insects that eat the (1)
Sometimes, these insects (2) the animals and make it hard for them to rest. To keep the crops safe, some farmers use (3), but others prefer natural ways, like letting birds eat the insects. This helps keep the farm (4) and safe for everyone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Lina and Maya went to the farm on a bright, sunny day. The farmer welcomed them kindly and showed them around. They saw cows eating grass and sheep resting under a big tree. A dog was guarding the animals, barking softly to keep them safe. Chickens were pecking at grains near the barn, and horses were pulling carts across the field. Lina and Maya helped the farmer feed the animals and collect fresh eggs. They learned that animals are helpful and important. It was a wonderful, happy day on the farm!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Lina and Maya went to the farm on a day.
a) rainy b) cloudy c) sunny d) windy
- 2 The farmer them kindly.
a) ignored b) welcomed c) called d) watched

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What were the cows doing in the field?
.....
- 4 How did Lina and Maya help the farmer?
.....
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.
.....



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Look! The cat (chases) a mouse in the barn.
- 2 Donkeys (not carry) heavy bags today.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 milking – The – cow – is – farmer – a.
.....
- 2 can – insects – of – eat – Egrets – hundreds.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how do water buffaloes help Egyptian farmers
.....
- 2 donkeys carry things every day
.....

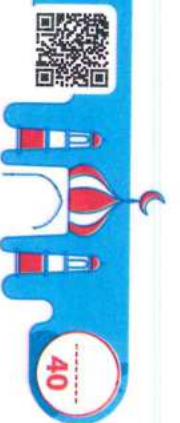
8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

“My favorite animal helper”

What is your favorite animal helper? – How does this animal help people?
– Why do you like this animal?





A. Listening

(الواجب الرابع في الاستماع أنشأ الكتيب)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 In Egypt, many animals help people in their (homes – daily lives – schools).
- 2 Strong water buffaloes work on (farms – markets – factories).
- 3 The water buffaloes pull (cars – ploughs – carts) through the fields.

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

hoppers – beak – feathers – farmers

Grandmother : Look, Farida! Do you see that white bird in the field?

Farida : Yes, Grandma! It has a long (1) What is it doing?

Grandmother : It uses its beak to catch (2) that eat the rice plants.

Farida : Oh, I see! It's eating those little insects, right?

Grandmother : Exactly, dear. Those birds help (3) by eating hoppers.

Farida : Its white (4) look so soft and shiny!

Grandmother : Yes, Farida. That's an egret — a very helpful bird on the farm.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Rescue dolphins work in the (mountains – city – sea) to save people.
- 2 What (do – does – is) the farmer do every afternoon?
- 3 Look! The sheep (eating – eats – is eating) green grass.
- 4 Horses help people feel (calm – angry – scared) when they spend time with them.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 Ahmed not watch TV every day.
- 2 Is the farmer clean the animal stalls right now?
- 3 Falcons isn't hunt at night.
- 4 Are the water buffaloes works in the field today?

D. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many animals are helpful and interesting. The falcon is a strong bird that flies fast and hunts from the sky. The scarab beetle works on the ground, helping the soil stay clean and healthy. The donkey is a hard worker that carries heavy things for people. The pigeon can fly far and sometimes carries messages. Each of these animals has a special job that helps nature and people.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 The donkey is a lazy animal. (.....)
- 2 The falcon can fly far and sometimes carry messages. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Each of these animals has a special job that helps (schools – nature – houses) and people.
- 4 The scarab beetle helps keep the (air – soil – plants) clean and healthy.
- 5 The donkey is a hard worker that (carries – eats – hides) heavy things for people.

E. Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences:

"How horses help people"

calm – spend time – feel – better

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Before traveling, don't forget to pack your
a) ticket b) torch c) campsites d) suitcase
- 2 At night, we sat around the to stay warm.
a) campfire b) Pyramids c) sandcastles d) vehicle
- 3 On our trip, we visited the amazing and learned about history.
a) temples b) cruise c) islands d) sandcastles
- 4 Every morning, we went for a along the mountains.
a) torch b) hike c) sandcastles d) vehicle
- 5 The most exciting part of the holiday was the along the Nile.
a) Nile cruise b) campsite c) Pyramids d) vehicle
- 6 The beach was crowded, but we built many in the sand.
a) vehicles b) sandcastles c) tents d) torches
- 7 We are going to tickets to see the museum and ancient monuments.
a) buys b) bought c) buying d) buy
- 8 We going to sail a small felucca on the Nile River.
a) is b) are c) do d) am
- 9 During our school trip, we slept in at the campsite.
a) torches b) tents c) vehicles d) sandcastles
- 10 The guides gave us a to see the Egyptian temples at night.
a) sandcastles b) suitcase c) torch d) meal

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

view – crowded – suitcase – fun – Bibliotheca

Last summer, I went on a summer trip with my family. We visited a (1) beach early in the morning and enjoyed the soft sand and clear water. I bought a ticket to enter a nearby museum. From the top, the (2) was amazing. In the afternoon, we went to the (3) to read interesting books and learn new facts. It was a wonderful day full of (4) and learning.

B

sandcastles – islands – trip – wonderful – travel

Last weekend, we joined a school camping trip near the sea. We wanted to (1) and explore new places. The beach was clean and sunny, and we had a great time building (2) together. In the afternoon, we sailed around the beautiful (3) and took amazing photos. It was a (4) experience!

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I am (go to) visit my grandparents next weekend.
- 2 He (not) going to travel to Aswan next summer.
- 3 (Be) you going to join the football team?
- 4 They are going to (built) a new bridge next year.
- 5 She is going to (buys) a new suitcase for her trip tomorrow.
- 6 The teacher (not/give) us homework tomorrow.
- 7 We (is) going to the library after school tomorrow.
- 8 (Be) it going to be sunny tomorrow?
- 9 My friends are (goes to) organize a birthday party for Sara next week.
- 10 I (not/go to) eat junk food anymore.

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 manar will travel to aswan next week.
- 2 they are going to take their passports
- 3 what did you buy for the Nile cruise?

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Guide dogs help move safely.
a) officers b) blind people c) farmers d) children
- 2 Police officers use police dogs to help them catch
a) criminals b) insects c) farmers d) guides
- 3 The farmer horses to carry heavy loads every day.
a) use b) uses c) used d) using
- 4 Scarab beetles help to waste in nature.
a) carry b) break down c) harm d) plant
- 5 Some farmers use water buffaloes to the ploughs.
a) carry b) pull c) pack d) damage
- 6 Look! The egrets are insects.
a) eats b) eating c) eat d) ate
- 7 Hoppers are insects that jump and sometimes crops.
a) damage b) guard c) grow d) rescue

- 8 A is a small lizard that eats insects inside houses.
 a) buffalo b) gecko c) falcon d) horse
- 9 Wool from sheep is used to make and blankets.
 a) supplies b) feathers c) sweaters d) tools
- 10 Farmers keep their animals in the
 a) field b) barn c) school d) temple

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A rescue – brave – guide dogs – criminals – narrow

Yesterday, the police dogs helped the officers catch dangerous (1) in the city. These dogs are trained to (2) people in danger and protect the community. Some dogs also help blind people to move safely in (3) streets. Everyone admired how (4) and smart these dogs are while doing their job.

B crops – geckos – waste – Pigeons – ploughs

In Egypt, many animals help people every day. On farms, strong water buffaloes pull (1) to prepare the soil for planting. Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage (2) Geckos climb on walls and eat insects in homes. (3) carry notes and letters between places. Scarab beetles work in the soil breaking down (4) to make it better for growing plants.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The donkey (carry) a heavy load at the moment.
- 2 Look! The falcon (fly) over the field right now.
- 3 Are the dolphins (swim) in the river today?
- 4 Farmers usually (plants) seeds in the spring.
- 5 Right now, the water buffalo (pull) the plough.
- 6 The pigeons (not/fly) at the moment; they are in their cage.
- 7 Does a gecko (eats) insects every day?
- 8 I (not/harvest) the crops today; I am resting.
- 9 The horses (carrying) loads every morning.
- 10 Are the farmers (prepare) the soil at the moment?

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We are going to a documentary about animals.
a) watches b) watching c) watch d) watched
- 2 We plan to go on a/an along the Nile River next week.
a) class b) Nile cruise c) adventure d) mountain
- 3 The narrow nature was perfect for hiking and enjoying nature.
a) campsite b) trail c) citadel d) library
- 4 The beach was so that I found just one spot to sit.
a) crowded b) wonderful c) beautiful d) amazing
- 5 Cows us fresh milk.
a) gives b) give c) giving d) gave

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 smart – dogs – very – and – Police – brave – are.
.....
- 2 swim – and – fast – Dolphins – very – are – active.
.....
- 3 criminals – police dogs – help – The – quickly – catch.
.....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Does the guide dog (helps) blind people every day?
- 2 I (not/prepare) the soil today; I am taking a break.
- 3 Look! The police dog (chase) the criminal right now.
- 4 He usually (go) shopping on weekends.
- 5 (Be) she going to tell him the truth later?

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Don't forget to buy a/an before boarding the felucca.
a) ticket b) adventure c) torch d) suitcase
- 2 We stayed in during the school camping trip.
a) tents b) suitcase c) boat d) citadel
- 3 She brought warm for hiking in the cold weather.
a) torch b) clothes c) adventure d) sandcastles
- 4 Lara is to pack light outfits for her next trip.
a) goes b) go c) went d) going
- 5 The children their teeth twice a day.
a) brush b) brushes c) brushed d) brushing

2 Read and complete the text using the words in the box:

bus – tents – hike – torch – camping

Next weekend, our class is going to travel to Wadi El Gemal Park for a school
(1) trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes,
a (2), and a water bottle. When we arrive, we will set up our
(3) near some amazing mountains. The next morning, we are going to
(4) on a nature trail and look for special birds.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- 1 The teacher (explain) the lesson right now.
- 2 Is the falcon (fly) over the desert at the moment?
- 3 They usually (travels) to Luxor in winter.
- 4 Look! The children (build) sandcastles on the beach.
- 5 Adam and Amr (going to) stay in a hotel.



1 Read and complete the dialog:

harm – crops – worried – officers – criminals

Omar : Hi, Lina! You look (1) What happened?

Lina : I saw some (2) near the farm, and they were causing
(3)

Omar : That sounds serious! Did anyone try to stop them?

Lina : Yes, the (4)..... came quickly and helped to protect the fields.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 He's very tired. He (~~are going to~~ – ~~is going to~~ – ~~going to~~) fall asleep any minute.
- 2 He (~~doesn't wear~~ – ~~isn't wearing~~ – ~~aren't wearing~~) a jacket because it isn't cold now.
- 3 Our (~~suitcase~~ – ~~adventure~~ – ~~boat~~) was full, so we had to carry some bags by hand.
- 4 At sunrise, we hiked along the (~~nature trail~~ – ~~campsite~~ – ~~Pyramids~~) and enjoyed the scenery.
- 5 The children used a small (~~torch~~ – ~~ticket~~ – ~~suitcase~~) to light the fire.

3 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 I watching my favorite cartoon every evening. (.....)
- 2 She not/go to school today. (.....)
- 3 The dog sleep under the tree every day. (.....)
- 4 We not/listen to music at the moment. (.....)
- 5 My mom cook dinner right now. (.....)
- 6 The teacher is going to explains the lesson again. (.....)
- 7 He is goes to be a doctor like his father. (.....)
- 8 Is your friends going to visit us today? (.....)



MODULE 3

Unit 5: Our Solar System

Unit 6: Offline but Happy (Story)

Unit

5

Our Solar System

مجموعتنا الشمسية

Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- recall keywords and names of planets from a dialog about the solar system.
- يتذكر الكلمات الرئيسية وأسماء الكواكب من محادثة عن النظام الشمسي.
- identify the main ideas of a conversation about space exploration.
- يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية في محادثة عن استكشاف الفضاء.
- use information from a listening passage to determine the order of events.
- يستخدم المعلومات من مقطع استماع لتحديد ترتيب الأحداث.

Speaking:

- explain their choices in a discussion about which planet is their favorite.
- يشرح اختياراته في مناقشة حول الكوكب المفضل لديه.
- answer questions based on visual information, such as pictures of space or planets.
- يجيب عن أسئلة بناءً على معلومات بصرية، مثل صور الفضاء أو الكواكب.
- present their work to the class.
- يعرض أعماله أمام الصف.

Reading:

- list key facts from an article.
- يسرد الحقائق الرئيسية من مقال.
- explain the meaning of compound words within a text.
- يشرح معنى الكلمات المركبة داخل نص.
- distinguish between adjectives and other parts of speech in a story.
- يميز بين الصفات وأجزاء الكلام الأخرى في قصة.

Writing:

- use correct comparative and superlative forms of adjectives in sentences.
- يستخدم الصيغ الصحيحة للمقارنة والتفضيل للصفات في الجمل.
- write a descriptive paragraph about a space trip, applying adjectives to make their writing more interesting.
- يكتب فقرة وصفية عن رحلة إلى الفضاء، مع تطبيق الصفات لجعل الكتابة أكثر تشويقًا.
- design a brochure for a planet, incorporating a title, facts, and images.
- يصمم كتيبًا عن كوكب، يتضمن عنوانًا وحقائق وصورًا.



Lesson 1

From Mercury to Neptune



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



the Sun
الشمس



the Moon
القمر



the solar system
المجموعة الشمسية



galaxy
مجرة

Planets

Mercury	كوكب عطارد	Venus	كوكب الزهرة	Earth	كوكب الأرض	Mars	كوكب المريخ
Jupiter	كوكب المشتري	Saturn	كوكب زحل	Uranus	كوكب أورانوس	Neptune	كوكب نبتون

Extra vocabulary

planetarium مركز عرض الفضاء والنجوم (قبة سماوية)	space museum متحف فضائي	guide مرشد
stars نجوم	screen شاشة	iron-rich soil تربة غنية بالحديد
the largest الأكبر	shiny rings حلقات لامعة	part of جزء من
the Milky Way مجرة درب التبانة	inside بداخل	exciting (adj) مثير

Expressions and Phrases

look red يبدو أحمر	Good job! أحسن!	Exactly! بالضبط!
-----------------------	--------------------	---------------------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
look at ينظر إلى	looked at	name يُسمى	named
Present	Past	Present	Past
see يرى	saw	make يجعل/ يصنع	made

Irregular verbs

Mercury	the smallest planet	أصغر كوكب
Mars	the red planet	الكوكب الأحمر
Saturn	a planet with rings	كوكب له حلقات
galaxy	a group of many stars	مجموعة من العديد من النجوم

A Trip to the Planetarium (القبة السماوية) رحلة إلى مركز عرض الفضاء والنجوم



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

"At the space museum, Amina, Omar, and a guide talk about planets and stars."

«في متحف الفضاء، تتحدث أمينة وعمر والمرشد عن الكواكب والنجوم».



Guide

Welcome, everyone, to the planetarium! Today we will learn about the solar system.

أهلاً بكم جميعاً في مركز عرض الفضاء والنجوم (القبة السماوية)! اليوم سنتعلم عن المجموعة الشمسية.

Wow! Oh, look at the big screen. I can see the Sun and the Moon.

رائع! انظروا إلى الشاشة الكبيرة. أستطيع أن أرى الشمس والقمر.



Amina



Guide

Mars is called the Red Planet because its iron-rich soil makes it look red.

يُسمى المريخ الكوكب الأحمر لأن تربه الغنية بالحديد تجعله يبدو أحمر اللون.

Ohhh, that's interesting!

أوه، هذا مثير للاهتمام!



Amina



Omar

Yeah! I see the planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars.

نعم! أرى الكواكب: عطارد، الزهرة، الأرض، والمريخ.

Good job! Those are the four small planets. Can you name a big one?

عمل رائع! هذه هي الكواكب الأربعة الصغيرة. هل يمكنك ذكر اسم كوكب كبير؟



Guide



Amina

Is it Jupiter?

هل هو المشتري؟

Yes! Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

نعم! المشتري هو أكبر كوكب في المجموعة الشمسية.



Guide



Omar

And those shiny rings—are they around Saturn?

وتلك الحلقات اللامعة — هل هي حول زحل؟



Guide

Exactly! Saturn is famous for its rings.

بالضبط! زحل مشهور بحلقاته.



Amina

Wow, so many stars!

رائع، كم هائل من النجوم!



Guide

Yes, they are part of a galaxy. Our galaxy is called the Milky Way.

نعم، هي جزء من مجرة. ومجرتنا تُسمى درب التبانة.



Omar

So the solar system is inside it?

إذن المجموعة الشمسية داخلها؟



Guide

Exactly! The Sun, Moon, and planets make space exciting to explore.

بالضبط! الشمس والقمر والكواكب تجعل الفضاء ممتعًا للاستكشاف.



Listening Tip!

Good listeners pay attention to:

المستمعون الجيدون ينتبهوا إلى:

Keywords الكلمات الرئيسية

(names, numbers, places)

الأسماء، الأرقام، الأماكن

Main ideas الأفكار الرئيسية

(what the speaker is mostly talking about)

الموضوع الذي يتحدث عنه المتحدث بشكل أساسي

Details

التفاصيل

(facts that give extra information)

الحقائق التي تعطي معلومات إضافية

Remember

You don't need to understand every single word to get the meaning!

لا تحتاج إلى فهم كل كلمة لتفهم المعنى!



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The students visit the planetarium to learn about space.
- يزور التلاميذ مركز عرض الفضاء والنجوم (القبة السماوية) ليتعلموا عن الفضاء.
- ✓ Amina and Omar see the Sun and the Moon on the big screen.
- ترى أمينة وعمر الشمس والقمر على الشاشة الكبيرة.
- ✓ Mars is called the Red Planet because of its iron-rich soil.
- يُسمى كوكب المريخ الكوكب الأحمر لأن تربه غنية بالحديد.
- ✓ Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars are small planets.
- عطارد، الزهرة، الأرض، والمريخ هي كواكب صغيرة.
- ✓ Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.
- المشتري هو أكبر كوكب في المجموعة الشمسية.
- ✓ Saturn is famous for its shiny rings.
- زحل مشهور بحلقاته اللامعة.
- ✓ Stars are part of a galaxy, and our galaxy is called the Milky Way.
- النجوم جزء من مجرة ومجرتنا تُسمى درب التبانة.
- ✓ The solar system is inside the galaxy.
- المجموعة الشمسية توجد داخل المجرة.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① Mars is called the Red (Plant – Plane – Plate – Planet) because of its iron-rich soil.
- ② Our galaxy is called the (Milky Way – Earth – Amazon – Moon).
- ③ We went on a trip to the (solar system – planetarium – museum – club) to learn about planets and stars.
- ④ Saturn is famous for its (rings – trees – stars – clouds).
- ⑤ Jupiter is the (smallest – largest – tallest – shortest) planet in the solar system.

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1 Sara and Omar are at the planetarium. (.....)
- 2 Mars is called the Blue Planet. (.....)
- 3 Jupiter is the largest planet. (.....)
- 4 Saturn has shiny rings around it. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Milky Way is the name of our
a) star b) planet c) galaxy d) moon
- 2 The Sun, Moon, and planets make space exciting to
a) explore b) find c) play d) draw
- 3 Jupiter is the largest planet in the system.
a) sun b) solar c) cooler d) ring
- 4 is famous for its shiny rings around it.
a) Mercury b) Saturn c) Neptune d) Mars
- 5 The "planetarium" is a building where you can learn about the
a) rings b) planets c) soil d) iron
- 6 Don't sit too close to the when you use the computer.
a) planet b) screen c) iron d) soil

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shiny – Jupiter – galaxy – rings – Planet

At the planetarium, Amina and Omar learn about space. They see the Sun, Moon, and stars. The guide tells them that (1)..... is the largest planet in the solar system. Mars is called the Red (2)..... . Saturn has (3)..... rings around it. Our (4)..... is called the Milky Way.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last week, the children went to the planetarium. They watched a big screen showing planets, the Sun and the Moon. There was a guide to help them. The children saw four small planets. Those are Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars. They learned that Mars is called the Red Planet because its iron-rich soil makes it look red. They also saw the shiny rings of Saturn. The guide told them that our galaxy is called the Milky Way. The planets, stars, and galaxies are exciting to explore.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Mars is called the Planet.
a) Blue b) Red c) Green d) Yellow
- 2 The children watched a big showing planets.
a) soil b) screen c) galaxy d) ring

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did the children go last week?

.....

- 4 What is our galaxy called?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 planet – is – the – largest – Jupiter.
.....
- 2 system – inside – The solar – is – the galaxy.
.....
- 3 famous – its – Saturn – rings – is – for.
.....
- 4 galaxy – is – Milky – called – Our – the – Way.
.....



6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 we learn about the solar system
.....
- 2 Do you want to visit the Moon or mars
.....



Lesson 2

From Egypt to the Galaxy

Sara Sabry: Reaching for the Stars

سارة صبرى: الوصول إلى النجوم



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Egyptian (adj)	مصرى	female	أنثى
astronaut	رائد فضاء	Arab (adj)	عربى
engineer	مهندس	young people	الشباب
impossible (adj)	مستحيل	the universe	الكون

Extra vocabulary

first (adj)	الأول	dreams	أحلام
drier (adj)	أكثر جفافاً	farther away (adj)	أبعد من ذلك

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
inspire يُلهِم	inspired	follow يتبع	followed
believe يعتقد/يؤمن	believed	describe يصف	described
imagine يتخيل	imagined	realize يُدرك	realized

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
become يصبح	became	say يقول	said

Egypt's First Astronaut أول رائدة فضاء مصرية



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

Why do you think she is holding the Egyptian flag in this picture?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut⁽¹⁾. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022.

Sara says, "I want to inspire⁽²⁾ young people in Egypt to follow⁽³⁾ their dreams and believe⁽⁴⁾ that nothing is impossible⁽⁵⁾."



In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets. She explains: Mercury is smaller than Earth. Venus is hotter than Earth. Mars is drier⁽⁶⁾ than Earth, while Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn has beautiful rings, and Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther⁽⁷⁾ away.

Sara describes looking at the Sun, the Moon, and the stars in our galaxy. "The galaxy is bigger than we imagine⁽⁸⁾," she says. Seeing Earth from space made her realize⁽⁹⁾ how small our planet is compared to the universe⁽¹⁰⁾.

- | | |
|------|---------------|
| (1) | رائدة فضاء |
| (2) | تلهم |
| (3) | يتبع |
| (4) | يؤمن |
| (5) | لا شيء مستحيل |
| (6) | أكثر جفافاً |
| (7) | أبعد |
| (8) | تتخيل |
| (9) | يدرك |
| (10) | الكون |

سارة صبري هي أول رائدة فضاء مصرية. أصبحت أول مهندسة عربية تسافر إلى الفضاء في عام 2022. تقول سارة: «أريد أن ألهم الشباب في مصر ليتبعوا أحلامهم ويؤمنوا بأنه لا يوجد شيء مستحيل».

في عملها، درست سارة المجموعة الشمسية والكواكب. تشرح قائلة:

عطارد أصغر من الأرض، والزهرة أكثر حرارة من الأرض، والمريخ أكثر جفافاً من الأرض، بينما كوكب المشتري هو أكبر الكواكب. يتميز زحل بحلقاته الجميلة، وأورانوس ونبتون أبعد وأبعد.

تصف سارة مشهد النظر إلى الشمس والقمر والنجوم في مجرتنا قائلة: «المجرة أكبر مما نتخيل». ورؤية الأرض من الفضاء جعلتها تدرك كم أن كوكبنا صغير مقارنة بالكون!



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut.

- سارة صبرى هى أول رائدة فضاء مصرية.

- ✓ She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022.

- أصبحت أول مهندسة عربية تسافر إلى الفضاء فى عام 2022.

- ✓ Sara wants to inspire young people to follow their dreams.

- سارة تريد أن تلهم الشباب لمتابعة أحلامهم.

- ✓ She studied the solar system and the planets.

- درست المجموعة الشمسية والكواكب.

- ✓ Mercury is smaller than Earth, Venus is hotter than Earth, and Mars is drier than Earth.

- عطارد أصغر من الأرض، والزهرة أكثر حرارة من الأرض، والمريخ أكثر جفافاً من الأرض.

- ✓ Jupiter is the largest planet.

- كوكب المشتري هو أكبر الكواكب.

- ✓ Saturn has beautiful rings.

- زحل لديه حلقات جميلة.

- ✓ Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away.

- أورانوس ونبتون أبرد وأبعد.

- ✓ Sara said that seeing Earth from space made her realize how small our planet is.

- قالت سارة إن رؤية الأرض من الفضاء جعلتها تدرك كم أن كوكبنا صغيراً!

✓ Checkpoint Read again and answer: SB

- 1 Who is Sara Sabry?

.....

- 2 What does Sara Sabry want to inspire young people in Egypt to do?

.....

- 3 Which planet is described as the largest?

.....

Language in Use

Comparatives and Superlatives المقارنات والتفضيلات

Short Adjectives

الصفات القصيرة (الصفة ذات المقطع الواحد)

Comparative adjectives

صفات المقارنة

We use comparatives to show how two things are different.

نستخدم المقارنات لإظهار مدى اختلاف شيئين.

For short adjectives, add (-er + **than**).

short adjective + **er** + **than** + صفة قصيرة

e.g. Mars is **smaller than** Earth.

كوكب المريخ أصغر من كوكب الأرض.

Superlative adjectives

صفات التفضيل

We use superlatives to show that one thing is the most in a group of three or more.

نستخدم صيغ التفضيل لإظهار أن شيئًا واحدًا هو الأكثر في مجموعة مكونة من ثلاثة أو أكثر.

For short adjectives, add (**the** + **-est**).

the + short adjective + **est** + صفة قصيرة

e.g. Jupiter is **the largest** planet in the solar system.

كوكب المشتري هو أكبر كوكب في المجموعة الشمسية.



Notes

لاحظ الآتي عند إضافة (est) و (er) للصفات القصيرة (ذات المقطع الواحد)

Comparatives

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (er):

e.g. small

smaller

الصفات المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (r):

e.g. large

larger

الصفات المنتهية بحرف ساكن (يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاعف الحرف الساكن ويضاف لها (er):

e.g. big

bigger

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ier):

e.g. heavy

heavier

Superlatives

معظم الصفات القصيرة يضاف لها (est):

e.g. small

smallest

الصفات المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (st):

e.g. nice

nicest

الصفات المنتهية بحرف ساكن (يسبقه حرف متحرك)، يضاعف الحرف الساكن ويضاف (est):

e.g. big

biggest

الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (iest):

e.g. happy

happiest



Special Tips

هناك بعض الصفات القصيرة تتغير تمامًا عند تحويلها إلى صفة مقارنة أو تفضيل وتحفظ كما هي مثل الآتي:

Short Adjectives	Comparatives	Superlatives
good	better than	the best
bad	worse than	the worst
far	further than	the furthest
	farther than	the farthest

e.g. Healthy food is **better than** fast food.

Fruit is **the best** snack for staying healthy.



Got it:

Cars are (**fastest**) than bicycles.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**faster**) لوجود كلمة (**than**) ولأننا نقارن بين شيئين فقط.

Long Adjectives

الصفات الطويلة (مقطعين أو أكثر)

Comparative adjectives

صفات المقارنة

For long adjectives (two or more syllables), we don't add **-er**.

للصفات الطويلة (مقطعين أو أكثر) لا نضيف -er

more + long adjective + **than** صفة طويلة

e.g. Venus is **more beautiful than** Earth.

كوكب الزهرة أكثر جمالاً من كوكب الأرض.

Superlative adjectives

صفات التفضيل

For long adjectives (two or more syllables), we don't add **-est**.

للصفات الطويلة (مقطعين أو أكثر) لا نضيف -est

the most + long adjective صفة طويلة

e.g. Neptune is **the most distant** planet from the Sun.

كوكب نبتون أبعد كوكب عن الشمس.



Got it:

This story is the (**more**) exciting one.

● الإجابة الصحيحة هي (**most**) في حالة التفضيل مع الصفة الطويلة نستخدم **the most + long adjective**.

Remember

Long Adjectives	Comparatives	Superlatives
beautiful	more beautiful than	the most beautiful
exciting	more exciting than	the most exciting
colorful	more colorful than	the most colorful

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية. 📌

- ① Ali is the (taller – tall – tallest – more tall) boy in the class.
- ② My house is (large – more large – largest – larger) than your house.
- ③ My brother is shorter (the – then – than – that) me.
- ④ This planet is (most beautiful – more beautiful – beautiful – the most beautiful) in the solar system.
- ⑤ Mars is (driest – drier – more dry – dry) than Earth.
- ⑥ This painting is (colorful than – more colorful – most colorful – colorful) than that one.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① The school is bigger (then) the library.
- ② My school bag is (heavy) than yours.
- ③ Jupiter is the (larger) planet in our solar system.
- ④ This planet is the (more exciting) in the solar system.
- ⑤ This flower is (most) colorful than that one.
- ⑥ The lion is (more strong) than the tiger.

Quick Practice on Comparatives and Superlatives

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The dog is (big) than the cat.
- 2 This story is (most) exciting story I've ever read.
- 3 Venus is the (more) beautiful planet in the sky.
- 4 Today is (cold) than yesterday.
- 5 This door is (tallest) than that one.
- 6 The new movie is (exciting) than the old one.
- 7 The Nile River is the (longer) river in the world.
- 8 The weather today is (bad) than yesterday.
- 9 Mars is (dry) than Earth.
- 10 Her dress is (expensive) than mine.
- 11 July is the (hotter) month.
- 12 Jupiter is the (larger) planet.
- 13 Neptune is (coldest) than Earth.
- 14 My uncle is (old) than my dad.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 is – than – Mercury – smaller – Earth.
.....
- 2 bigger – The galaxy – than – imagine – we – is.
.....
- 3 cake – sweetest – This – is – the bakery – in – the.
.....
- 4 want – inspire – I – people – to – in Egypt.
.....
- 5 is – Egyptian – She – the first – astronaut – female.
.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sara Sabry is the first astronaut from Egypt.
a) male b) female c) child d) kid
- 2 is the largest planet in the solar system.
a) Mars b) Uranus c) Neptune d) Jupiter
- 3 Young people in Egypt should their dreams.
a) forget b) leave c) follow d) waste
- 4 Apples are than chips.
a) healthy b) healthiest c) healthier d) most healthy
- 5 Mangoes are the delicious fruit for me.
a) more b) most c) must d) better
- 6 Traveling to space can help people learn more about the
a) city b) country c) village d) universe
- 7 The galaxy is than we imagine.
a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) the bigger
- 8 Sara Sabry wants to young people in Egypt.
a) forgot b) inspire c) stop d) ignore

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **SB**

space – young – dreams – impossible – engineer

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into (1) in 2022. Sara wants to inspire (2) people in Egypt. She advises them to follow their (3) and believe that nothing is (4) In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sara Sabry studied the solar system and the planets. She explains: Mercury is smaller than Earth. Venus is hotter than Earth. Mars is drier than Earth, while Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn has beautiful rings, and Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away. Sara describes looking at the Sun, the Moon, and the stars in our galaxy. "The galaxy is bigger than we imagine," she says. Seeing Earth from space made her realize how small our planet is compared to the universe.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Mercury is than Earth.
a) bigger b) smaller c) colder d) taller
- 2 Saturn has beautiful
a) dots b) stars c) moons d) rings

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Sara Sabry study?
.....
- 4 Which planet is the largest in the solar system?
.....
- 5 What did she realize when she saw Earth from space?
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Sara is (careful) than her brother.
- 2 Venus is (most) beautiful than Earth.
- 3 My room is the (big) room in the house.
- 4 Mount Everest is the (high) mountain in the world.
- 5 My new house is (most) comfortable than the old one.
- 6 The Sun is the (brighter) star in the solar system.
- 7 Winter is the (cold) season.
- 8 A giraffe is (tall) than a monkey.
- 9 This movie is (exciting) than the other one.
- 10 Our galaxy is (big) than we imagine.
- 11 English is the (more) important language in the world.
- 12 This is (most) expensive restaurant in the city.

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:**"The first astronaut"**

female – engineer – inspire



.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 3

The Planet Project



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

classmate	زميل دراسة	science class	حصة العلوم	poster	لوحة / ملصق
-----------	------------	---------------	------------	--------	-------------

Extra vocabulary

sunlight	ضوء الشمس	chart	مخطط (اللوحة)	way	طريقة / أسلوب
worried (adj)	قلق	facts	حقائق	bright (adj)	ساطع / لامع
clear (adj)	واضح	together	معًا	better (adj)	أفضل

Expressions and Phrases

Great teamwork!	عمل جماعي رائع!	take too long	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
I want it my way	أريده بطريقي	look worried	يبدو قلقًا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
finish يُنهي	finished	sigh يتنهد	sighed
work يعمل	worked	add يضيف	added
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
shake يهز	shook	write يكتب	wrote

Definitions

poster	a big paper with pictures and writing	ورقة كبيرة بها صور وكتابة
color pencils	tools for drawing and coloring	أدوات للرسم والتلوين
messy	not clean or not neat	غير نظيف أو غير مرتب
rings	thin circles around Saturn	دوائر رقيقة حول كوكب زحل
teamwork	working together to finish something	العمل معًا لإنهاء شيء ما



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What do you think the children are doing?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Nada and Adam were **classmates**⁽¹⁾ in **science class**⁽²⁾. Their teacher asked them to make a classroom **poster**⁽³⁾ about the planets.

At first, Adam wanted to do everything himself.

He drew Mercury, Venus, and Earth. But the work took too long, and the sunlight colors looked **messy**⁽⁴⁾.



Nada sat quietly with her color pencils. "Can I help?" Nada asked.

Adam shook his head. "No, I want it my way."

The next day, the homework chart still wasn't finished. The teacher looked **worried**⁽⁵⁾. Adam **sighed**⁽⁶⁾. "Okay, Nada, you can help."

Together, they worked after school. Nada colored Mars red and added rings to Saturn. Adam wrote **facts**⁽⁷⁾: "Jupiter is the largest planet. Neptune is the farthest."

When they finished, the planet poster was bright and clear. The teacher smiled, "Great **teamwork**⁽⁸⁾!"

Nada and Adam smiled too. They learned something bigger than planets.

Working together makes the job easier—and better.



- | | |
|-----|------------------|
| (1) | زملاء دراسة |
| (2) | حصة العلوم |
| (3) | ملصق |
| (4) | فوضوى (غير منظم) |
| (5) | قلق |
| (6) | تهد |
| (7) | حقائق |
| (8) | عمل جماعى |

كانت ندى وأدم زميلين في حصة العلوم. طلب منهما معلمهما عمل لوحة فصلية عن الكواكب. في البداية، أراد آدم أن يقوم بكل شيء بنفسه. رسم عطارد والزهرة والأرض. لكن العمل استغرق وقتًا طويلًا، وكانت ألوان الشمس تبدو فوضوية. جلست ندى يهدوء مع أقلامها الملونة. سألت ندى: «هل يمكنني المساعدة؟» هز آدم رأسه: «لا، أريد أن يكون على طريقتي». في اليوم التالي، لا يزال رسم الواجب غير مكتمل. بدأ المعلم قلقًا. تهد آدم وقال: «حسنًا، ندى، يمكنك المساعدة». معًا، عملا بعد المدرسة. لونت ندى المريخ بالأحمر وأضافت الحلقات إلى زحل. كتب آدم الحقائق: «المشتري هو أكبر كوكب. نبتون هو الأبعد». عندما انتهيا، كانت لوحة الكواكب مشرقة وواضحة. ابتسم المعلم: «عمل جماعى رائع!» ابتسمت ندى وأدم أيضًا. لقد تعلموا شيئًا أكبر من الكواكب: العمل معًا يجعل المهمة أسهل وأفضل.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Nada and Adam were classmates in science class.

- ندى وآدم كانا زميلين في حصة العلوم.

- ✓ Their teacher asked them to make a classroom poster about the planets.

- طلب معلمهما منهما عمل ملصق عن الكواكب للفصل.

- ✓ Adam wanted to do everything himself at first, but it was too hard.

- في البداية، أراد آدم أن يفعل كل شيء بنفسه، لكن الأمر كان صعبًا جدًا.

- ✓ Nada offered to help, but Adam said no at first.

- عرضت ندى المساعدة، لكن آدم رفض في البداية.

- ✓ The next day, Adam let Nada help, and they worked together after school.

- في اليوم التالي، سمح آدم لندى بالمساعدة، وعملًا معًا بعد المدرسة.

- ✓ Nada colored Mars red and added rings to Saturn; Adam wrote planet facts.

- لونت ندى المريخ باللون الأحمر وأضافت حلقات لزحل؛ كتب آدم حقائق عن الكواكب.

- ✓ Their poster became bright and clear, and their teacher said, "Great teamwork!"

- أصبح ملصقهما مشرقًا وواضحًا، وقال معلمهما «عمل جماعي رائع!»

- ✓ They learned that working together makes the job easier and better.

- تعلموا أن العمل معًا يجعل المهمة أسهل وأفضل.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Read again and answer: SB

- ① What was Nada and Adam's project about?
- ② Why did Adam let Nada help him in the end?
- ③ What lesson did Nada and Adam learn at the end?

2. Read and write T (True) or F (False): SB

- ① At first, the poster looked messy because Adam worked alone. ()
- ② The students learned that teamwork makes the job easier. ()
- ③ The moral of the story is: "It is always better to work alone". ()

Word Building Skills

Compound Words

Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

A compound word is made when two small words are joined together to make one new word.

تتكون الكلمة المركبة عندما يتم ضم كلمتين صغيرتين معاً لتكوين كلمة واحدة جديدة.

e.g.

class + room = classroom (a room where you study)

الفصل الدراسي (غرفة تدرس فيها).



sun + light = sunlight (light from the sun)

ضوء الشمس (الضوء القادم من الشمس).



foot + ball = football (a game with a ball you kick)

كرة القدم (لعبة بالكرة التي تركلها).



star + fish = starfish

نجم البحر



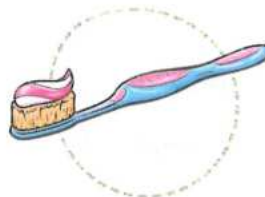
note + book = notebook

كُرّاسة



lunch + box = lunchbox

علبة طعام



tooth + brush = toothbrush

فرشة أسنان



bed + room = bedroom

غرفة نوم

Sometimes compound words are written as one word (classroom), sometimes as two words (ice cream).

أحياناً تُكتب الكلمات المركبة ككلمة واحدة (classroom)، وأحياناً تُكتب ككلمتين (ice cream).

✓ Checkpoint

Read the text and circle the compound words:



Nada and Adam wanted to finish their schoolwork on time. They used teamwork to read a storybook and share ideas. Adam drew a picture on the blackboard while Nada wrote notes in her notebook. Together, they showed that friendship and hard work can solve problems.



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1 Nada and Adam were classmates in science class. (.....)
- 2 The teacher asked them to make a cake. (.....)
- 3 Adam didn't want to do anything. (.....)
- 4 They learned that working together makes the job easier. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The classroom looks very and not clean after the art class.
a) messy b) tidy c) beautiful d) big
- 2 We use when we color paintings.
a) pens b) pencils c) color pencils d) spoons
- 3 means working together to finish something.
a) Teamwork b) Alone c) Lonely d) Classmate
- 4 Sama is my best at school.
a) sister b) brother c) classmate d) neighbor
- 5 He can't finish his homework. He looked
a) happy b) worried c) proud d) excited
- 6 Working together makes the job easier and
a) bad b) messy c) better d) slower

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

bright – worked – asked – colored – messy

Sama and Rana were classmates in science class. Their teacher (1) them to make a poster about the planets. They (2) together. Sama drew and (3) Mars red. She added rings to Saturn. Rana wrote facts: "Jupiter is the largest planet. Neptune is the farthest." When they finished, the planet poster was (4) and clear.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Teamwork means working together to do something. When we work in a team, we can finish the work faster and better. We share ideas and learn new things from each other. Teamwork teaches us how to talk and work with others. It also helps us to be friendly and more social. Working in a team makes everything easier and more fun! In a team, everyone has a job. We listen to others and help each other. It also helps us trust and respect our friends.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Teamwork means working to do something.
a) slowly b) quickly c) alone d) together
- 2 The underlined word "It" refers to the
a) teamwork b) idea c) work d) friend

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do we share when we work in a team?

.....

- 4 What does the teamwork teach us?

.....

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Can i help you

.....

- 2 they learned something bigger than planets

.....

6 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Teamwork"

poster – help each other – easier



.....



Lessons 4 and 5 A Dream in Space



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

spaceship	سفينة فضاء	rocket	صاروخ	alien	كائن فضائي
-----------	------------	--------	-------	-------	------------

Extra vocabulary

round (adj)	دائري	noise	ضوضاء / صوت
dark (adj)	مظلم	lights	أضواء
swing	أرجوحة	slide	زلاجة
soft (adj)	ناعم	band of	مجموعة من
gas	غاز	dust	غبار
billion	مليار	comets	مذنبات
asteroids	كويكبات	edge	حافة
huge (adj)	ضخم	glowing (adj)	مشعّ / مُتوهّج

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
land	landed	roll	rolled
look like	looked like	remember	remembered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
go up	went up	spin	spun

My Trip in a Spaceship رحلتى فى سفينة فضاء



Look and read:

انظر واقراً:



Warm up

Do you think there could be other living creatures on space?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a big, shiny spaceship⁽¹⁾ with round windows.

The rocket⁽²⁾ made a loud noise⁽³⁾ as it went up into the dark⁽⁴⁾ sky. Outside, the bright Moon looked like⁽⁵⁾ a lamp, and the stars were like small lights in the sky.

When the spaceship landed⁽⁶⁾, I saw a fun playground in space.

The swings were made of light, and the slide looked so colorful.

There was even a round star-ball rolling⁽⁷⁾ on the ground.

Then, a kind alien⁽⁸⁾ with big eyes smiled at me. He showed me his planet. The houses were like soft⁽⁹⁾ clouds, and the children played football with the glowing star-ball⁽¹⁰⁾. We laughed and played together.

It was a happy and fun place. When I woke up, I still remembered the bright colors in space.



- | | |
|------|---------------------|
| (1) | سفينة فضائية |
| (2) | صاروخ |
| (3) | صوت عالٍ |
| (4) | مظلم |
| (5) | يشبه |
| (6) | هبط |
| (7) | تدحرج الكرة النجمية |
| (8) | كائن فضائي |
| (9) | ناعم |
| (10) | كرة نجمية متوهجة |

✓ Checkpoint Read again and answer:

SB

① Where was the narrator at the beginning of the dream?

② What were the houses on the alien's planet like?

الليلة الماضية حلمتُ حلمًا، كنتُ داخل سفينة فضاء كبيرة ولامعة لها نوافذ مستديرة. أصدر الصاروخ صوتًا عاليًا أثناء صعوده إلى السماء المظلمة. في الخارج، بدا القمر الساطع كالمصباح، وكانت النجوم مثل الأضواء الصغيرة في السماء. عندما هبطت سفينة الفضاء، رأيت ساحة لعب ممتعة في الفضاء. كانت الأراجيح مصنوعة من الضوء، وكانت الزلاجة تبدو ملونة جدًا. وكان هناك كرة نجمية مستديرة تدحرج على الأرض. ثم، ابتسم لي كائن فضائي طيب بعيون كبيرة، وأراني كوكبه. كانت المنازل مثل السحب الناعمة، وكان الأطفال يلعبون كرة القدم بالكرة النجمية المتوهجة. ضحكنا ولعبنا معًا. كان مكانًا سعيدًا وممتعًا. وعندما استيقظت، ما زلت أتذكر الألوان الزاهية في الفضاء.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Last night, I had a dream. - في الليلة الماضية، رأيت حلمًا.
- ✓ I was inside a big, shiny spaceship. - كنت داخل سفينة فضاء كبيرة ولامعة.
- ✓ The rocket went up into the dark sky. - انطلق الصاروخ إلى السماء المظلمة.
- ✓ The Moon looked like a lamp and the stars were like small lights. - كان القمر يبدو مثل المصباح، والنجوم مثل الأضواء الصغيرة.
- ✓ The spaceship landed in a fun playground in space. - هبطت السفينة الفضائية في ساحة لعب ممتعة في الفضاء.
- ✓ A kind alien showed me his planet. - كائن فضائي لطيف أراني كوكبه.
- ✓ The children played football with a glowing star-ball. - كان الأطفال يلعبون كرة القدم بكرة نجمية متوهجة.
- ✓ It was a happy and fun place. - كان مكانًا سعيدًا وممتعًا.

How to write a descriptive paragraph:

- 1 Start with where your story happens (in a spaceship, on a planet, on the moon, etc.).
ابدأ بمكان حدوث قصتك (في سفينة فضاء، على كوكب، على القمر، إلخ).
- 2 Who is in your story (you, a friend, an astronaut, or an alien).
من الموجود في قصتك؟ (أنت، صديقك، رائد فضاء، أو كائن فضائي).
- 3 Use adjectives to describe what you see (big, bright, shiny, fun, etc.).
استخدم الصفات لوصف ما تراه (كبير، ساطع، لامع، ممتع، إلخ).
- 4 Add something exciting that happens (visiting a planet, finding a playground, etc.).
أضف شيئًا مثيرًا يحدث (زيارة كوكب، العثور على ساحة لعب، إلخ).
- 5 End with how you feel about your trip.
أنهِ حديثك بذكر مشاعرك تجاه رحلتك.

Your Turn:

Write a paragraph of (30- 40) words about your own trip in space: **SB**

.....

.....

.....

.....

Space Travel Fact File ملف حقائق عن السفر إلى الفضاء



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Fact File: The Milky Way Galaxy

What is the Milky Way?

- The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are.
- It looks like a bright **band of**⁽¹⁾ stars across the night sky.
- It is shaped like a big circle that **spins**⁽²⁾, full of stars, gas, and **dust**⁽³⁾.



What's Inside?

- The Milky Way has over 200 **billion**⁽⁴⁾ stars!
- It has planets, moons, and rocks like **comets**⁽⁵⁾ and **asteroids**⁽⁶⁾.
- The Sun is one of the stars near the **edge**⁽⁷⁾ of our galaxy.

Where Are We?

- Our solar system is part of the Milky Way.
- We live on Earth, the third planet from the Sun.
- It takes the Sun about 230 million years to travel once around the Milky Way!

Amazing Facts

- The Milky Way is so **huge**⁽⁸⁾ that light takes about 100,000 years to cross it!
- When you see stars in the night sky, you're looking at our galaxy.
- There may be other galaxies like the Milky Way in the universe — even bigger ones!

(1)	مجموعة من
(2)	تدور
(3)	غبار
(4)	مليار
(5)	مذنبات
(6)	كويكبات
(7)	حافة
(8)	ضخم

أين نحن؟

نظامنا الشمسي هو جزء من درب التبانة.
نعيش على الأرض، الكوكب الثالث من الشمس.
تستغرق الشمس حوالي ٢٣٠ مليون سنة لتدور مرة واحدة حول درب التبانة!

حقائق مذهلة

درب التبانة كبيرة جدًا لدرجة أن الضوء يحتاج إلى حوالي ١٠٠,٠٠٠ سنة لعبورها!
عندما ترى النجوم في السماء ليلاً، فأنت تنظر إلى مجرتنا.
قد تكون هناك مجرات أخرى مثل درب التبانة في الكون — وربما أكبر منها!

ملف حقائق: مجرة درب التبانة

ما هي درب التبانة؟

درب التبانة هي المجرة التي تقع فيها الأرض والشمس.
تبدو مثل مجموعة مضيئة من النجوم عبر السماء ليلاً.
شكلها دائرة كبيرة تدور، مليئة بالنجوم والغاز والغبار.

ماذا يوجد بداخلها؟

تحتوي درب التبانة على أكثر من ٢٠٠ مليار نجم!
كما تحتوي على كواكب وأقمار وصخور مثل المذنبات والكويكبات.
الشمس هي واحدة من النجوم الموجودة قرب حافة مجرتنا.

How to create Your Own Space Fact File:

كيفية إنشاء ملف حقائق عن الفضاء خاص بك:

1 Choose a Planet

اختر كوكبًا

Pick a real planet like Mars or Saturn, or make up your own imaginary one!

اختر كوكبًا حقيقيًا مثل المريخ أو زحل، أو ابتكر كوكبًا خياليًا خاصًا بك!

(Example: Planet Glitterstar or Planet IceCloud!)

2 Write 3–4 Short Parts

اكتب ٣:٤ أجزاء قصيرة

Use these sections to organize your fact file:

استخدم هذه الأقسام لتنظيم ملف الحقائق الخاص بك:

- Welcome to my planet – introduce your planet.
- What you can see – describe what it looks like.
- What you can do – talk about fun or strange activities visitors can try.
- How you will feel – describe the experience or mood.

3 Use Adjectives

استخدم صفات

Make your writing colorful! Use describing words like:

اجعل كتابتك ملونة! استخدم كلمات وصفية مثل:

big, hot, shiny, colorful, fun, quiet, bright.

4 Add a Compound Word

أضف كلمة مركبة

Include at least one compound word such as:

تضمن كلمة مركبة واحدة على الأقل مثل:

spaceship, moonlight, starlight, sunlight, spacewalk.

5 Decorate Your Fact File

زين ملف الحقائق

Draw or decorate with planets, stars, rockets, and spaceships.

ارسم أو زين بالكواكب والنجوم والصواريخ والمركبات الفضائية.

Make it creative and bright!



Tip

Use short, clear sentences and imagine you're a space explorer writing to invite people to your planet!

استخدم جملًا قصيرة وواضحة وتخيل أنك مستكشف فضاء يكتب لدعوة الناس إلى كوكبك!



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Last night, I had a party. (.....)
- 2 The rocket made a loud noise. (.....)
- 3 I saw a fun playground in space. (.....)
- 4 The alien showed me his toy. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Milky Way is a
a) sun b) galaxy c) star d) planet
- 2 Our solar system is the Milky Way.
a) inside b) outside c) in front of d) behind
- 3 We live on Earth, the planet from the Sun.
a) first b) second c) third d) fourth
- 4 The can travel to space and fly to the Moon.
a) boat b) bus c) plane d) spaceship
- 5 The Sun is a shiny
a) planet b) star c) moon d) galaxy
- 6 The Milky Way is so that light takes about 100,000 years to cross it!
a) small b) short c) tall d) huge

Super Question ?

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

lamp – landed – remembered – round – stars

Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a big, shiny spaceship with (1) windows. Outside, the bright Moon looked like a (2) and the stars were like small lights in the sky. When the spaceship (3), I saw a fun playground in space. When I woke up, I still (4) the bright colors in space.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Milky Way is our galaxy. It is very large and looks like a bright band of stars. It has planets, moons, and rocks such as comets and asteroids. Our planet, Earth, is also part of this galaxy. The Milky Way is so huge that light takes about 100,000 years to cross it! When you see stars in the night sky, you are looking at our galaxy. There may be other galaxies in space, some of which may be even bigger than the Milky Way.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Milky Way looks like a bright band of
 a) stars b) rocks c) moons d) planets
- 2 The light takes about years to cross the Milky Way.
 a) 10,000 b) 100,000 c) 1,000,000 d) 100

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is the Milky Way?

- 4 What does the Milky Way have?

- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 what's inside the Milky Way

- 2 there may be other galaxies like the Milky Way in the universe

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"Your trip in a spaceship"

dream – moon – alien



Unit 5

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

the Sun	الشمس	the Moon	القمر
the solar system	المجموعة الشمسية	galaxy	مجرة
planetarium	مركز عرض الفضاء والنجوم (قبة سماوية)	space museum	متحف فضائي
guide	مرشد	stars	نجوم
screen	شاشة	iron-rich soil	تربة غنية بالحديد
the largest	الأكبر	shiny rings	حلقات لامعة

Lesson (2)

Egyptian	مصري	female	أنثى
astronaut	رائد فضاء	Arab	عربي
engineer	مهندس	young people	الشباب
first	الأول	dreams	أحلام
drier	أكثر جفافاً	the universe	الكون

Lesson (3)

classmate	زميل دراسة	science class	حصة العلوم
poster	ملصق	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
chart	مخطط (لوحة)	way	طريقة / أسلوب
worried	قلق	facts	حقائق
bright	ساطع / لامع	clear	واضح
together	معاً	better	أفضل

Lessons (4 and 5)

spaceship	سفينة فضاء	rocket	صاروخ
alien	كائن فضائي	round	دائري
dark	مظلم	lights	أضواء
comets	مذنبات	asteroids	كويكبات
edge	حافة	huge	ضخم

Language in Use

Comparatives and Superlatives

Short Adjectives

Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

short adjective + **er** + **than** + صفة قصيرة

e.g. Mars is **smaller than** Earth.

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

the + short adjective + **est** + صفة قصيرة

e.g. Jupiter is **the largest** planet in the solar system.

Comparatives and Superlatives

Long Adjectives

Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

more + long adjective + **than** + صفة طويلة

e.g. Venus is **more beautiful than** Earth.

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

the most + long adjective + صفة طويلة

e.g. Neptune is **the most distant** planet from the sun.

Unit 5

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالإنجليزية	الكلمة بالعربية
the Sun	القمر
the solar system	مجرة
Mercury	كوكب المشتري
exciting	كوكب زحل
guide	شاشة

Lesson 2

Egyptian	أكثر جفافاً
astronaut	الشباب
Arab	مهندس
dreams	أنثى

Lesson 3

classmate	حصة علوم
poster	طريقة/أسلوب
worried	ساطع/لامع
clear	أفضل
together	حقائق

Lessons 4 and 5

round	صاروخ
noise	مظلم
lights	ضخم
dust	حافة

Conjugation of verbs

يهدف هذا التدريب لقياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present

Past

Present

Past

.....	named	see	.....
inspire	.....	.....	realized
.....	landed	.....	described
imagine	.....	spin	.....
.....	finished	.....	followed

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.



How to write about “Egypt’s first female astronaut”:

- Sara Sabry is + اكتب جنسيتها ووظيفتها.
- She traveled into space in + اكتب تاريخ ذهابها الى الفضاء.
- She wants + اكتب ماذا تريد ان تفعل.
- She studied + اكتب ما قامت بدراسته.

“Egypt’s first female astronaut”

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. She wants to inspire young people in Egypt. She studied the solar system and the planets.



How to write about “My best classmate”:

- My best classmate is + اكتب اسم زميل فصلك.
- We worked together to make + اكتب ما قمتم بفعله.
- Use adjectives to describe + استخدم صفات لتصف ما قمتم بفعله.
- Teamwork is + اذكر مميزات العمل الجماعي.

“My best classmate”

My best classmate is Rana. Yesterday, our teacher asked us to do a project on planets. We worked together in groups to make a classroom poster. When we finished, the planet poster was bright and clear. Teamwork is very useful. Working together makes the job easier and better.

1 Read the sentences and fill in the blanks using words from the box:

rings – Mars – largest – Milky

- 1 Jupiter is the planet in the solar system.
- 2 is called the Red Planet.
- 3 Saturn has shiny around it.
- 4 Our galaxy is called the Way.

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct comparative form (more than):

- 1 This movie is (exciting) than the one we watched yesterday.
- 2 Sara is (careful) than her brother.
- 3 English is (useful) than many other languages.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Solar power is than fuel in long space missions.
a) useful b) more useful c) the most useful d) most usefully
- 2 Mars is than Mercury.
a) cold b) colder c) coldest d) more cold
- 3 The Sun is star in our solar system.
a) bright b) brighter c) the brightest d) more bright
- 4 Mars is planet for scientists to explore.
a) interesting b) more interesting
c) the most interesting d) most interestingly



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 We visited the Egyptian Museum. (.....)
- 2 The guide explained some facts about space. (.....)
- 3 Our galaxy is called the Milky Way. (.....)
- 4 Jupiter is the smallest planet in the solar system. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The explains the solar system, planets and stars.
a) guide b) nurse c) artist d) doctor
- 2 I worked with my in science class.
a) classmate b) driver c) waiter d) neighbor
- 3 The giraffe is the animal.
a) tallest b) more taller c) tall d) taller
- 4 Summer is than spring.
a) hot b) hottest c) most hot d) hotter

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

played – ideas – universe – teamwork – project

Nada and Adam are classmates. They wanted to finish their (1)..... on time. They worked together. They read a book and shared (2)..... Adam drew a picture of the (3)....., while Nada wrote notes in her notebook. Together, they showed that (4)..... and hard work can solve problems.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female **astronaut**. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. She wants to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible. In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets. She explained that Mercury is smaller than Earth and Venus is hotter than Earth, and Mars is drier than Earth, while Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn has beautiful rings, and Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sara Sabry traveled into space in
a) 2020 b) 2023 c) 2022 d) 2010
- 2 An **astronaut** is someone who
a) rides a plane b) travels to space
c) studies the weather d) fixes rockets

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who is Sara Sabry?
.....
- 4 What does Sara Sabry want to inspire young people in Egypt to do?
.....
- 5 Which planet is the largest?
.....



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Sara is the (**more**) careful girl in the class.
- 2 Egypt is (**popular**) than many other countries.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 lights – made – The – were – swings – of.
.....
- 2 travel – We – the space – can – in – a spaceship – to.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 How does ramy describe looking at the Sun
.....
- 2 mars is the most interesting planet for scientists to explore
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"My trip to space"

spaceship – sun – planets





Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Hana and Ramy were classmates. (.....)

2 Their teacher asked them to make a poster. (.....)

3 Ramy worked with his friends. (.....)

4 Together, they finished quickly. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1 is the smallest planet.

a) Mercury

b) Mars

c) Saturn

d) Earth

2 My room is than my sister's room.

a) cleaning

b) clean

c) cleanest

d) cleaner

3 We went to the to see planets and stars.

a) planetarium

b) library

c) museum

d) school

4 The elephant is largest animal in the zoo.

a) then

b) the

c) than

d) this

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

circle – stars – fourth – system – third

The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are. It looks like a bright band of (1)..... across the night sky. It is shaped like a big (2)..... that spins, full of stars, gas, and dust. Our solar (3)..... is part of the Milky Way. We live on Earth, the (4)..... planet from the Sun.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

I am Jana. Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a big, shiny spaceship with round windows. Outside, the bright Moon looked like a lamp, and the stars were like small lights in the sky. When the spaceship landed, I saw a fun playground in space. The swings were made of light, and the slide looked so colorful. There was even a round star-ball rolling on the ground. Then, a kind alien with big eyes smiled at me. He showed me his planet. The houses were like soft clouds. We laughed and played together. It was a happy and fun place.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "alien" means someone who
a) lives in a different country b) likes studying space
c) travels to space d) lives on another planet
- 2 The general idea of the text is about
a) Jana's dream b) a park c) a round star-ball d) swings

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did the spaceship land?

4 What were the swings made of?

5 Who showed Jana his planet?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 The Sun is (bright) than the Moon.

2 Mars is (small) than Earth.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

1 will – Today – we – about – learn – the planetarium.

2 is – I – that – believe – nothing – impossible.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 you must follow your dreams

2 which planet is the smallest

8 Write a paragraph of about FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"Working together"

together – easier – faster





تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأهر.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1 Last (month – week – year), Mariam went to the planetarium.
- 2 They watched the (Sun – house – school) on a big screen.
- 3 Mars is called the (Blue – Green – Red) Planet.

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

easier – poster – teamwork – classmate

Yara : What did you do yesterday?

Ahmed : I made a (1).....

Yara : Did you do it alone?

Ahmed : No, I worked with my (2).....

Yara : Do you like (3).....?

Ahmed : Yes, I do. Working together makes the job (4)..... and better.

C. Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The Sun is one of the stars near the (center – edge – top) of our galaxy.
- 2 Seeing Earth from space made Sara realize how (big – far – small) our planet is.
- 3 English is (useful – more useful – most useful) than many other languages.
- 4 Mars is the (most exciting – more exciting – exciting) planet in the solar system.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

- 1 Mount Everest is the higher mountain in the world. ()
- 2 Yesterday was hottest than today. ()
- 3 This picture is most colorful than my picture. ()
- 4 Mars is drier then Earth. ()

D. Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

At the space museum, Amina, Omar, and a guide talk about the solar system and stars. They see the Sun, the Moon, and planets on a big screen. Mars is red, Jupiter is the largest, and Saturn has shiny rings. The guide explains that stars are part of the Milky Way galaxy. Space is exciting and fun to explore for everyone. At the end of the day, Amina and Omar felt happy and excited.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 Jupiter is the smallest planet. ()
- 2 Saturn has shiny rings. ()

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who talks about the solar system at the museum?
- 4 What does the guide explain about stars?
- 5 What did Amina and Omar feel at the end of the day?

E. Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Four sentences:

"My planet project"

teacher – classmate – bright – teamwork

Story

Offline but Happy

Learning Outcomes

• By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية القصة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Speaking:

• retell the story "Offline but Happy" using their own words.

- يعيد سرد قصة «غير متصل بالإنترنت ولكن سعيد» باستخدام كلماته الخاصة.

• discuss their own experiences about screen time and playing with friends.

- يناقش تجاربه الشخصية حول وقت استخدام الشاشات واللعب مع الأصدقاء.

• create a short role-play inspired by the story.

- ينشئ تمثيلًا قصيرًا (مسرحية قصيرة) مستوحى من القصة.

Listening:

• identify the gist.

- يحدد الفكرة العامة.

• identify the key details.

- يحدد التفاصيل الأساسية.

• arrange events in the correct order after listening.

- يرنّب الأحداث بالترتيب الصحيح بعد الاستماع.

• answer comprehension questions about what they heard.

- يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بما سمعه.

Reading:

• correctly identify the story elements.

- يحدد عناصر القصة بشكل صحيح.

• recognize new vocabulary from the story in context.

- يتعرف المفردات الجديدة من القصة في سياقها الصحيح.

• answer different level comprehension questions to show understanding of the text.

- يجيب عن أسئلة فهم بمستويات مختلفة لإظهار فهم النص.

Writing:

• write short paragraphs summarizing the story.

- يكتب فقرات قصيرة تلخص القصة.

• write a short paragraph about "A day without screens".

- يكتب فقرة قصيرة عن «يوم بدون شاشات».

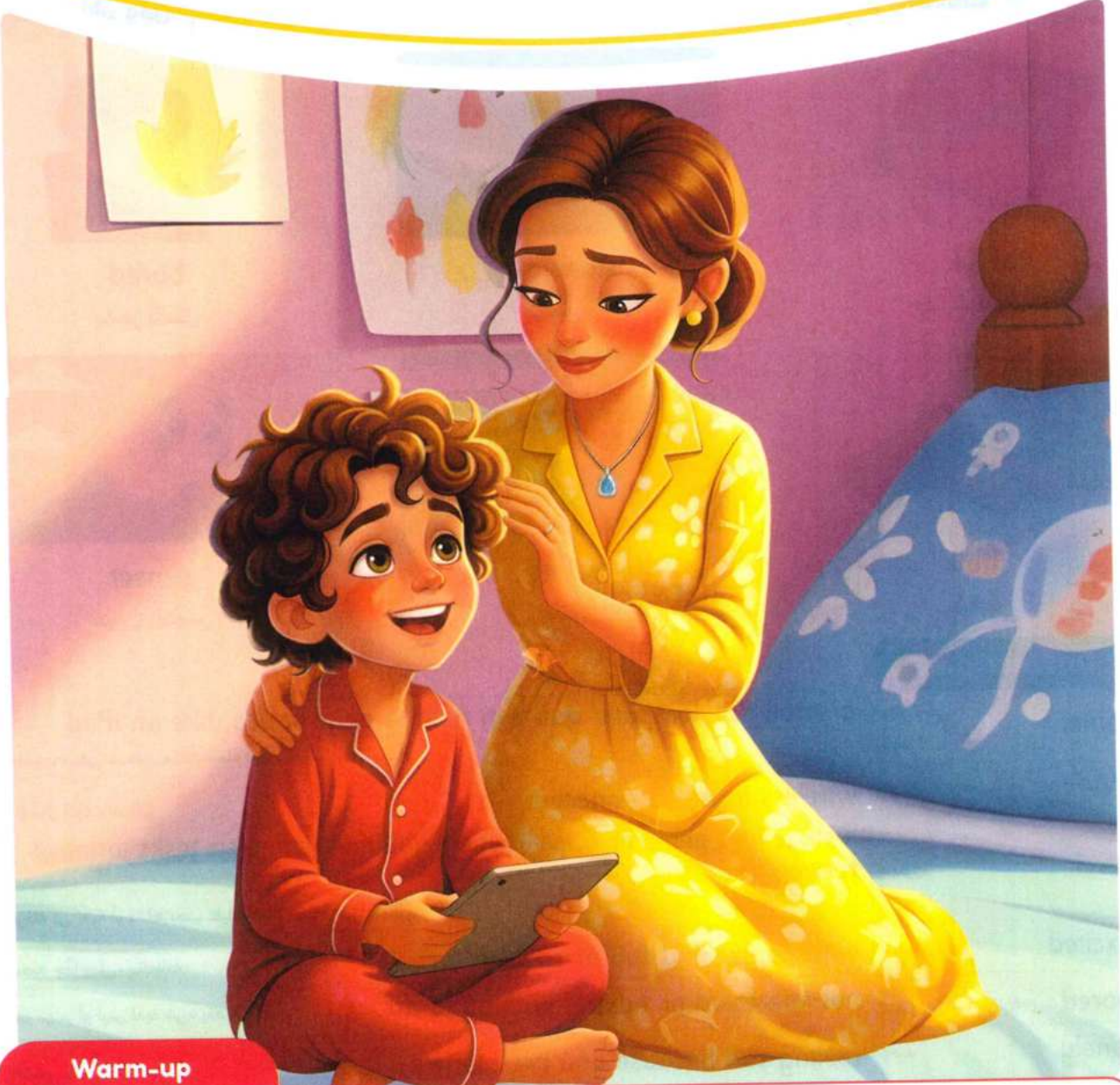
• express personal opinions in writing.

- يعبر عن الآراء الشخصية بالكتابة.

Offline but Happy

Title
العنوان

غير متصل بالإنترنت ولكن سعيد



Warm-up

It was a sunny Friday morning. Tarek wanted to play on his tablet, but the Wi-Fi was not working. He felt lonely and looked outside. He saw his friends laughing and playing with bikes. At first, he did not want to join, but then he decided to go outside. Tarek learned that playing with friends is more fun than staying alone with a tablet.

كان صباح يوم جمعة مشمسًا. أراد طارق أن يلعب على جهازه اللوحي، لكن الواي فاي لم يكن يعمل. شعر بالوحدة ونظر إلى الخارج. رأى أصدقاءه يضحكون ويلعبون بالدراجات. في البداية لم يرغب في الانضمام إليهم، لكنه قرر الخروج بعد ذلك. تعلم طارق أن اللعب مع الأصدقاء أكثر متعة من البقاء وحيدًا مع الجهاز اللوحي.



Vocabulary

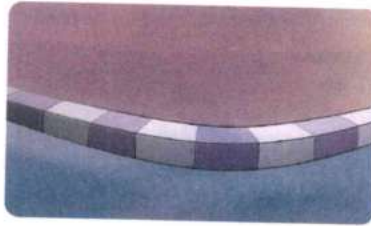


Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



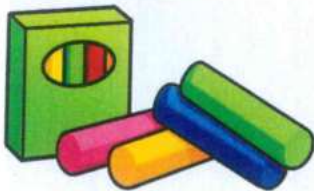
tablet
جهاز لوحى (تابليت)



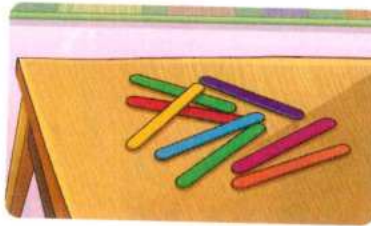
sidewalk
رصيف



bored
يشعر بالملل



chalk
طباشير



sticks
عصى



sunset
غروب الشمس

Definitions

tablet	جهاز لوحى (تابليت)	a small flat computer you can hold in your hands, like an iPad حاسوب صغير مسطح يمكنك حمله فى يديك، مثل جهاز آيباد
Wi-Fi	واى فاى	wireless internet connection اتصال إنترنت لاسلكى
level	مستوى	a stage in a game or activity where you must complete tasks to move forward مرحلة فى لعبة أو نشاط يجب عليك إكمال المهام فيها للمضى قدمًا.
excited	متحمس	very happy and full of energy سعيد جدًا وملىء بالطاقة
bored	يشعر بالملل (زهقان)	not interested or having nothing to do غير مهتم أو ليس لديه شىء يفعله
lonely	وحيد	feeling sad because you are alone الشعور بالحزن لأنك بمفردك
rode	ركب	to sit and move on a bike أن تجلس وتتحرك على دراجة
called out	نادى بصوت عالٍ	to shout so someone can hear you أن تصرخ ليتمكن شخص ما من سماعك
whispered	همس	to speak very softly أن تتحدث بنعومة شديدة
breeze	نسيم	a light, gentle wind رياح خفيفة ولطيفة
sidewalk	رصيف	the path beside a road where people walk المسار الموجود بجانب الطريق حيث يمشى الناس
chalk	طباشير	a soft white or colored stick used for writing or drawing عصا بيضاء أو ملونة ناعمة تستخدم للكتابة أو الرسم



Story Elements

Title العنوان

The name of the story
Offline but Happy

اسم القصة
غير متصل بالإنترنت ولكن سعيد

Setting المكان

Where and when the story takes place.

أين ومتى تجرى أحداث القصة؟

Time: **A beautiful Friday morning and afternoon.**

يوم جمعة جميل وقت الصباح وبعد الظهر.

Place: **Tarek's house (specifically his bedroom) and the neighborhood outside (the sidewalk and a park).**

المكان: منزل طارق (تحديدًا غرفة نومه) والحي الخارجي (الرصيف والحديقة).

Characters الشخصيات

People in the story

الأشخاص داخل القصة



Tarek
طارق



Amir
أمير



Laila
ليلي



Dina
دينا

Plot / Problem الحبكة / المشكلة

What happens in the story – the sequence of events from beginning to end.

ماذا يحدث في القصة؟ تسلسل الأحداث من البداية إلى النهاية.

Tarek loved playing games on his tablet and wanted to reach level 20 one Friday morning. But when the internet stopped working, he felt bored and didn't know what to do. From his window, he saw his friends Laila, Amir, and Dina playing outside. At first, he refused to join them, but later he felt lonely and decided to go out. When he joined his friends, they drew with chalk, rode bikes, and played in the park. Tarek laughed and had a wonderful time. When the Wi-Fi came back, he chose to keep playing with his friends instead of going back to his tablet. At the end of the day, he realized that real life and friendship are more fun than any game on a screen.

كان طارق يحب اللعب على جهازه اللوحي (التابلت)، وأراد أن يصل إلى المستوى العشرين في لعبته صباح يوم الجمعة. لكن عندما انقطع الإنترنت، شعر بالملل ولم يعرف ماذا يفعل. ومن نافذته، رأى أصدقاءه ليلى وأمير ودينا يلعبون في الخارج. في البداية رفض الانضمام إليهم، لكنه شعر بالوحدة بعد فترة فقرر الخروج. عندما خرج ولعب معهم، رسموا بالطباشير، وركبوا الدراجات، ولعبوا في الحديقة. ضحك طارق كثيراً واستمتع بوقته. وعندما عاد الإنترنت، قرر أن يبقى مع أصدقائه بدلاً من العودة إلى جهازه اللوحي (التابلت). وفي نهاية اليوم، أدرك أن الحياة الحقيقية والصداقة أكثر متعة من أي لعبة على الشاشة.

Solution الحل

What happens to fix or solve the problem.

ماذا يحدث لإصلاح المشكلة أو حلها.

Tarek solved his problem by going outside and spending time with his friends instead of staying alone with his tablet. He discovered that playing, laughing, and talking with friends made him much happier than playing games on a screen.

حلَّ طارق مشكلته عندما خرج ليلعب ويقضي الوقت مع أصدقائه بدلاً من البقاء وحيداً مع جهازه اللوحي (التابلت). واكتشف أن اللعب والضحك والتحدث مع أصدقائه جعله أكثر سعادة من اللعب على الشاشة.

Moral الدرس الأخلاقي

The lesson or message the story teaches.

- الدرس أو الرسالة التي تعلمها القصة.

Real happiness comes from spending time with people we love, not from screens or games.

السعادة الحقيقية تأتي من قضاء الوقت مع من نحب، وليس من الشاشات أو الألعاب.

Technology is fun, but friendship and real-life experiences are more valuable.

- التكنولوجيا ممتعة، لكن الصداقة والتجارب الواقعية أكثر قيمة.



Story



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وقم بتبادل الأدوار:



"It was a beautiful Friday morning. The sky was clear and blue, and the birds were singing in the trees. Tarek jumped out of bed, **grabbed** his tablet, and smiled. "Today I'll reach level 20!" he said proudly.

He **pressed** the power **button**. The game started, but when he tried to play, a message **popped up**: "No Internet Connection!"

Tarek **frowned** and tried again. Still nothing. "Mom! The Wi-Fi isn't working!" he called out. His mother walked in with a smile. "The internet is down today. Maybe you can find something fun to do outside." Tarek **sighed**. "Fun? Without Wi-Fi? Impossible!"

كان صباح يوم جمعة جميلًا، كانت السماء صافية وزرقاء، والعصافير تُغرد بين الأشجار. استيقظ طارق بسرعة من سريره، وأمسك بجهازه اللوحي (التابلت) وابتسم قائلاً بفخر: «اليوم سأصل إلى المستوى العشرين!» ضغط على زر التشغيل وبدأت اللعبة، ولكن عندما حاول اللعب ظهرت على الشاشة رسالة تقول: «لا يوجد اتصال بالإنترنت!». عبس طارق وحاول مرة أخرى، ولكن دون فائدة. نادى على والدته قائلاً: «أمي! الواي فاي لا يعمل!». دخلت والدته الغرفة وهي تبسم وقالت: «الإنترنت متوقف اليوم، ربما يمكنك أن تجد شيئاً ممتعاً تفعله في الخارج». تهعد طارق وقال: «ممتع؟ بدون واي فاي؟ هذا مستحيل!».

Keywords

grabbed

أمسك

pressed

ضغط على

button

زر

popped up

ظهر

frowned

عبس/كشر

sighed

تهعد



He sat on his bed, looking at his **silent** tablet. The room felt **empty** and quiet. He tried watching old videos, but they weren't interesting anymore.

Out the window, he saw Laila, Amir, and Dina laughing and running around with their bikes. Laila called: "Hey, Tarek! Come **outside**! We're going to the park!" Tarek **shook** his head. "No thanks! I'm... uh... **busy**!"

But after a while, he started feeling **lonely**. He missed laughing and talking with his friends. The tablet was just a silent screen now. He looked at it again and said softly, "Maybe I'll just go for a few minutes."

جلس طارق على سريره وهو ينظر إلى جهازه اللوحي الصامت. كانت الغرفة تبدو فارغة وهادئة. حاول مشاهدة بعض المقاطع القديمة، لكنها لم تعد ممتعة كما كانت من قبل. ومن النافذة رأى ليلي وأمير وديننا يضحكون ويدورون بدراجاتهم. نادى ليلي قائلة: «مرحباً يا طارق! تعال إلى الخارج! نحن ذاهبون إلى الحديقة!». هزَّ طارق رأسه وقال: «لا، شكرًا! أنا... مشغول!». لكن بعد فترة بدأ يشعر بالوحدة، واشتاق إلى الضحك والحديث مع أصدقائه. أصبح جهازه اللوحي (التابلت) الآن مجرد شاشة صامتة. نظر إليه مرة أخرى وقال بصوت خافت: «ربما أخرج لبضع دقائق فقط».

Keywords

silent	صامت	empty	فارغ	outside	في الخارج
shook	هز	busy	مشغول	lonely	الشعور بالوحدة



When he stepped outside, the warm **sunshine** touched his face, and a cool **breeze** blew through his hair. Laila smiled and waved.

"You came! We're drawing on the sidewalk. Want to help?" She **handed** him a piece of colorful chalk. Together, they drew a **giant** smiling sun, a tall **castle**, and even a **rocket ship**. Then Amir shouted, "Let's race to the park!"

They rode their bikes, laughing the whole way. At the park, they played **hide-and-seek** and built a **pretend shop** with leaves and sticks. Tarek laughed so much his stomach **hurt**.

"I forgot how much fun this is!" he said happily.

عندما خرج طارق إلى الخارج، لامس ضوء الشمس الدافئ وجهه، وهبّت نسمة هواء باردة حرّكت شعره برفق. ابتسمت ليلي ولوّحت له بيدها قائلة: «لقد أتيت! نحن نرسم على الرصيف، هل تريد أن تساعدنا؟».

ناولته قطعة من الطباشير الملوّن، وبدعوا معًا يرسمون شمسًا كبيرة مبتسمة، وقلعة عالية، وحتى صاروخًا فضائيًا. ثم صرخ أمير قائلاً: «هيا نتسابق إلى الحديقة!».

انطلقوا بدراجاتهم يضحكون طوال الطريق. وفي الحديقة، لعبوا لعبة الغميضة، وبنوا متجرًا وهميًا من الأوراق والأغصان. ضحك طارق كثيرًا حتى شعر بألم في بطنه من كثرة الضحك، وقال بسعادة: «لقد نسيت كم هذا ممتع!».

Keywords

sunshine	ضوء الشمس	breeze	نسمة هواء	handed	ناول
giant	كبير/عملاق	castle	قلعة	rocket ship	سفينة صاروخية
hide-and-seek	لعبة الغميضة	pretend shop	متجر وهمي	hurt	يؤلم



Later that afternoon, Tarek's mom called from the house. "Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!" He stopped and looked at his friends. They were all **covered in** chalk **dust** and smiling from ear to ear. He thought for a **second**. Should he run back inside and play his game? Then Dina said, "Come on, Tarek! One more round of hide-and-seek!" Tarek smiled. "The Wi-Fi can wait!" And off he ran, laughing louder than ever.

فى وقتٍ لاحقٍ من ذلك اليوم، نادى والدته طارق من داخل المنزل قائلة: «طارق! عاد الواى فاى!». توقف طارق ونظر إلى أصدقائه، كانوا جميعًا مغطيين بغبار الطباشير وتعلو وجوههم ابتسامات عريضة. فكر للحظة: هل يعود إلى الداخل ليلعب لعبته؟ لكن دينا قالت: «هيا يا طارق! جولة أخرى من لعبة الغميضة!». ابتسم طارق وقال: «الواى فاى يمكنه الانتظار!». ثم ركض وهو يضحك بصوتٍ أعلى من أى وقتٍ مضى.

Keywords

covered in

مغطى

dust

غبار

second

ثانية/لحظة



At **sunset**, the four friends sat under the big tree, watching the sky turn orange and pink. Laila said, "This was the best day ever."
Tarek smiled and **nodded**. "You know what? I didn't even **miss** my tablet. I think real life is more fun."

When he went to bed that night, he **placed** his tablet on the shelf and **whispered**. "You're fun, but my friends are even more fun." From that day on, Tarek still used his tablet—but only at the **minimal use** after he spent time with his friends. Because he learned something important: No tablet, phone, or screen can ever replace the **joy** of **friendship**.

عند غروب الشمس، جلس الأصدقاء الأربعة تحت الشجرة الكبيرة، يراقبون السماء وهي تتحول إلى اللونين البرتقالي والوردي. قالت ليلي: «كان هذا أفضل يوم على الإطلاق.» ابتسم طارق وأومأ برأسه قائلاً: «هل تعرفون؟ لم أفقد جهازى اللوحى (التابلت). أعتقد أن الحياة الواقعية أكثر متعة.» وعندما ذهب إلى النوم تلك الليلة، وضع طارق جهازه اللوحى (التابلت) على الرف وهمس: «أنت ممتع، لكن أصدقائى أكثر متعة.» ومنذ ذلك اليوم، استمر طارق فى استخدام جهازه اللوحى (التابلت)، لكن بشكل محدود فقط بعد أن يقضى وقتاً مع أصدقائه. لأنه تعلم درساً مهماً: لا جهاز لوحيًا (تابلت)، ولا هاتف، ولا أى شاشة يمكن أن تحل محل متعة الصداقة الحقيقية.

Keywords

miss	أومأ برأسه	nodded	غروب	sunset
minimal use	همس	whispered	وضع	placed
	صداقة	friendship	متعة	joy



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: **SB**

- 1 What happened at the beginning of the story?
 - a) Tarek's friends came to visit him.
 - b) Tarek's Wi-Fi stopped working.
 - c) Tarek went to the park.
 - d) Tarek lost his tablet.
- 2 Why did Tarek feel bored?
 - a) His friends didn't want to play with him.
 - b) His tablet was broken.
 - c) The Wi-Fi was not working, so he couldn't play online.
 - d) He had too much homework.
- 3 What did Tarek and his friends do outside?
 - a) Played video games.
 - b) Watched a movie.
 - c) Drew pictures with chalk and rode their bikes.
 - d) Built a sandcastle.
- 4 When the Wi-Fi came back, what did Tarek decide to do?
 - a) Go back home and play his game.
 - b) Keep playing with his friends.
 - c) Watch TV.
 - d) Tell his mom to turn it off again.
- 5 What lesson did Tarek learn at the end?
 - a) Wi-Fi is more important than school.
 - b) Friends are more fun than screens.
 - c) Drawing is boring.
 - d) He should buy a new tablet.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **SB**

friends – tablet – Wi-Fi – bored – outside – fun – lesson

Tarek was very excited to play on his (1) On Friday morning, he grabbed his tablet, but the (2) stopped working. At first, he felt (3) and didn't know what to do. Then, he looked out the window and saw his (4) playing (5) He decided to join them, and together they laughed and had so much (6) At the end of the day, Tarek learned an important (7) : that real friendship is better than any screen.

3 Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- 1 Tarek was happy and excited when he first found out the Wi-Fi was down. (.....)
- 2 Tarek felt lonely after staying inside by himself for a while. (.....)
- 3 The friends rode their bikes to the park. (.....)
- 4 Tarek thought playing outside was boring. (.....)

4 Answer the following questions:

1 Why do you think Tarek was upset when the Wi-Fi stopped working?

.....

2 What made Tarek change his mind and go outside?

.....

3 How do you think Tarek felt while playing with his friends? Explain why.

.....

4 What do you think was the happiest moment in the story? Why?

.....

5 How do friends make our lives better than screens do?

.....

5 Read and fill in the blanks using the correct words from the box:

friends – outside – whispered – hide-and-seek – breeze – sunset

1 When Tarek stepped....., the warm sunshine touched his face, and a cool blew through his hair.

2 At the park, they played and built a pretend shop.

3 At, the four friends sat under the big tree.

4 When Tarek went to bed, he placed his tablet on the shelf and, "You're fun, but my friends are even more fun."

5 Tarek learned that no screen can replace the joy of

6 Write the numbers 1–6 to show the correct order of the events:

- ☐ Tarek decided to go outside for a few minutes.
- ☐ Tarek's mom told him the internet was down.
- ☐ They drew with chalk and raced to the park.
- ☐ Tarek saw a "No Internet Connection" message.
- ☐ Tarek told his friends, "The Wi-Fi can wait!"
- ☐ Tarek jumped out of bed and grabbed his tablet.

Final Revision and Tests



- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on Each Two Units
- Story Corner
- Conjugation of Verbs
- 19 Final Tests
- 5 Al-Azhar Tests

Units 1&2



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

playing board games	لعب ألعاب الطاولة	skating	التزلج
activities	أنشطة	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
painting	الرسم باستخدام الألوان	schoolwork	الواجبات المدرسية
singing	الغناء	solving puzzles	حل الألغاز
have fun	يستمتع	playing the piano	العزف على البيانو
crafting with paper	الأشغال اليدوية بالورق	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
Talent Show	عرض المواهب	hobby	هواية
strong	قوى	drawing	رسم
journals	يوميات	perform	يؤدي
free time	وقت فراغ	skills	مهارات
relax	يستريح	energetic	نشط
Hobby Club	نادى الهوايات	creativity	إبداع
special talent	موهبة خاصة	patience	الصبر
friendship	الصداقة	outside	الخارج
reading corner	ركن القراءة	problem-solving	حل المشكلات
join	يلتحق بـ / ينضم إلى	enjoyment	متعة
classmates	زملاء الدراسة	agreement	اتفاق
caring for	الاعتناء بـ	first	أولاً
leadership	قيادة	discussion	مناقشة
solution	حل	next	التالي
then	ثم	keyboard	أرج / لوحة مفاتيح
progress	تقدم	gardening	أعمال البستنة والتشجير
soil	تربة	nature	طبيعة
instrument	آلة موسيقية	interests	الاهتمامات
match	يتناسب / يتوافق مع	survey	استبيان/استطلاع رأي

Unit 2

feel sick	يشعر بالمرض	safe	آمن
check in	تسجيل الوصول	hurt	يؤلم / ألم
careful	حذر	tests	اختبارات / تحاليل
headache	صداع	scissors	مقص
treatment	علاج	cough	سعال / كحة
bandages	ضمادات	playrooms	غرف اللعب
sore throat	التهاب في الحلق	bruises	كدمات
accessible	يمكن الوصول إليه	stomachache	ألم في المعدة
accidents	حوادث	teamwork	عمل جماعي
pharmacy	صيدلية	ready	جاهز
receptionist	موظف استقبال	fever	حمى
worry	يقلق	clinic	عيادة
permission	إذن / تصريح	comfortable	مريح
examination room	غرفة الفحص	dangerous	خطير
plasters	لاصقات طبية	serious	خطير / جاد
first aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية	rest	يستريح
donate	يتبرع	sick leave	إجازة مرضية
medicine	دواء	care	رعاية
cuts	جروح	children's hospital	مستشفى الأطفال
clean	نظيف	full	ممتلئ / كامل
healthy habits	عادات صحية	injured	مصاب
vegetables	خضراوات	exercise	تمرين / يتمرّن
junk food	طعام غير صحي / وجبات سريعة	brain	عقل



on Vocabulary Units 1&2

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We did a to ask students about their favorite hobbies.
a) survey b) road c) desert d) meal
- 2 First, you should plant the in the soil and then water them.
a) stamps b) instruments c) seeds d) pots
- 3 My favorite is drawing and coloring.
a) sport b) hobby c) rule d) job
- 4 We should show for animals and plants every day.
a) discussion b) care c) talent d) soil
- 5 I like with paper to make colorful shapes.
a) singing b) reading c) crafting d) relaxing
- 6 By practicing every day, we can make good in our skills.
a) breaks b) mistakes c) progress d) problems
- 7 Cycling and skating are great ways to stay
a) sleepy b) energetic c) lazy d) quiet
- 8 The librarian made a small for students who love books.
a) music room b) science lab c) playground d) reading corner
- 9 We need to have to finish a big puzzle.
a) friendship b) patience c) height d) surprise
- 10 You should after finishing your schoolwork.
a) jump b) shout c) argue d) relax

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) Hobby Club – organized – instrument – creative – solve

In our school, life is full of fun and learning. Students meet every week in the (1) to share ideas and show talents. A student plays an (2) while others sing songs and draw pictures. Some students (3) puzzles together, and everyone enjoys the activities. The classroom is always (4) and full of excitement.

B) reading corner – sad – friendship – energetic – helpful

In the Hobby Club, students enjoy many activities during their free time. True (1) grows when everyone helps and respects each other. Some children spend time in the (2) reading books and sharing stories. Everyone feels (3) when learning new skills and trying new activities. No one feels (4) because the club is full of fun and support.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Are you for the school trip tomorrow?
a) ready b) dangerous c) sleepy d) creative
- 2 You must get from your teacher before leaving the classroom.
a) sick leave b) discussion c) treatment d) permission
- 3 Climbing on a high wall without a helmet is very
a) healthy b) dangerous c) organized d) safe
- 4 The nurse put on the cut to protect it.
a) plasters b) bruises c) pharmacy d) first aid kit
- 5 A is very useful to help people after accidents.
a) temperature b) sore throat c) fever d) first aid kit
- 6 If you are feeling unwell, you should ask your teacher for
a) sick leave b) healthy habits c) discussion d) progress
- 7 The doctor made a for the patient to follow every day.
a) sick leave b) first aid kit c) treatment plan d) hobby club
- 8 He stayed home because he had a
a) bruise b) stomachache c) medicine d) plaster
- 9 Most colds are with rest and medicine.
a) funny b) curable c) low cost d) energetic
- 10 The museum is to everyone, including people with disabilities.
a) curable b) dangerous c) healthy d) accessible

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

donating – strong – feels sick – exercise – caring

To stay healthy, we should eat well and (1) regularly. If someone (2), they might need to rest. People can also help others by (3) food or clothes to those in need. Regular exercise keeps our bodies (4) and full of energy, and many healthy activities are available at a low cost.

B)

bruises – serious – injured – nurse – medicine

Children should always play safely. If someone gets (1) while playing, parents should stay calm. Some injuries can be (2), so be careful. The doctor may give (3) to help the patient feel better. Students don't have to worry, because the (4) always knows how to help.

Units 1 & 2



B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 1

Expressing Ability التعبير عن القدرة

To express ability in the present:

للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع:

We use **can** to show what someone is able to do now.

نستخدم "can" لنعبر عما يستطيع شخص ما فعله الآن.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (فاعل) + **can** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. - She **can play** the piano.

هي تستطيع عزف البيانو.

- You **can do** it.

يمكنك فعلها.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (فاعل) + **cannot (can't)** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. - They **can't skate**.

هم لا يستطيعون التزلج.

- Omar **can't sleep** because of noise.

عمر لا يستطيع أن ينام بسبب الضوضاء.

To express ability in past:

للتعبير عن القدرة في الماضي:

We use **could** to show what someone was able to do in the past.

نستخدم "could" لنعبر عما كان يستطيع شخص فعله في الماضي.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (فاعل) + **could** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. I **could read** short stories when I was six.

كنت أستطيع قراءة القصص القصيرة عندما كنت في السادسة من عمري.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (فاعل) + **could not (couldn't)** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. - She **couldn't draw** when she was younger.

لم تكن تستطيع الرسم عندما كانت أصغر سنًا.

- I **couldn't come** early yesterday.

لم أستطع أن أتى مبكرًا أمس.

Unit 2

Have to / Don't have to vs. Must / Mustn't for health rules

To talk about things, we should do.

Something necessary

شيء ضروري

Have to

We use "have to" to talk about something necessary.

- نستخدم "have to" للتحدث عن شيء ضروري "لكن ليس الزامى".

..... الفعل فى المصدر **have to + inf.**

e.g. Students **have to wash** their hands.
- الطلاب يجب أن يغسلوا أيديهم.

للتحدث عن أشياء يجب علينا فعلها.

Strong rule

قاعدة قوية

Must

We use "must" to talk about very important rule.

- نستخدم "must" للتحدث عن قاعدة هامة جدًا "الزامية".

..... الفعل فى المصدر **must + inf.**

e.g. You **must drink** water.
- يجب أن تشرب الماء.

VS

Remember

I/ We/ You/ They + **have to + (inf.)** الفعل فى المصدر

Nurses **have to make** sure the first aid kit is full.

He/ She/ It + **has to + (inf.)** الفعل فى المصدر

Salma **has to help** her mom.

To talk about things, we shouldn't do.

Something not necessary

شيء غير ضروري

Don't have to

We use "don't have to" to talk about something not necessary.

- نستخدم "don't have to" للتحدث عن شيء ليس ضروري.

..... الفعل فى المصدر **don't have to + inf.**

e.g. We **don't have to worry** about small cuts because the nurse will help us.
- لا داعى للقلق بشأن الجروح الصغيرة لأن الممرضة ستساعدنا.

للتحدث عن أشياء لا يجب علينا فعلها.

Not allowed

شيء غير مسموح به

Mustn't

We use "mustn't" to talk about something not allowed.

- نستخدم "mustn't" للتحدث عن شيء غير مسموح.

..... الفعل فى المصدر **mustn't + inf.**

e.g. You **mustn't eat** too much candy.
- يجب ألا تأكل الكثير من الحلوى.

VS

Remember

I/ We/ You/ They + **don't have to + (inf.)** الفعل فى المصدر

You **don't have to wear** a jacket. It's warm.

He/ She/ It + **doesn't have to + (inf.)** الفعل فى المصدر

Omar **doesn't have to wake up** early tomorrow.

Practice



on Grammar Units 1 & 2

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I play football now because I'm tired.
a) can b) could c) can't d) couldn't
- 2 She read books when she was five.
a) can b) could c) can't d) is
- 3 We watch TV now because it's bed time.
a) can b) could c) can't d) couldn't
- 4 My sister play the guitar when she was young, but now she can.
a) couldn't b) could c) can't d) doesn't
- 5 They solve the puzzle now.
a) can b) could c) couldn't d) didn't
- 6 He climb trees when he was a child.
a) can b) could c) can't d) wasn't
- 7 We go to the park yesterday because it was raining.
a) can b) could c) can't d) couldn't.
- 8 I swim now, but I didn't know how when I was five.
a) can b) could c) can't d) did
- 9 She can this puzzle now.
a) solve b) solved c) solves d) solving
- 10 she draw when she was six?
a) Can b) Could c) Do d) Does

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I can (spoke) English in class.
- 2 She (can) ride a bike, but she's learning.
- 3 He can (sang) very well. He has a special talent.
- 4 You (could) draw very well. That's such a lovely picture!
- 5 We (can't) see the stars last night. The sky wasn't clear.
- 6 He can (plays) football now.
- 7 I could (wrote) letters when I was six.
- 8 She (can't) sing yesterday because she was sick.
- 9 We couldn't (watched) TV last night because the electricity was off.
- 10 She couldn't (found) her bag yesterday.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I finish my homework now because the teacher doesn't need it today.
a) must b) don't have to c) has to d) am not
- 2 She drink milk every day. It's good for her health.
a) must b) doesn't have to c) mustn't d) have to
- 3 I go to the doctor. My stomach hurts.
a) have to b) mustn't c) doesn't have to d) has to
- 4 You eat too much sugar. It's bad for your teeth.
a) must b) mustn't c) doesn't have to d) has to
- 5 They be polite to their teacher.
a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) has to
- 6 He play computer games all night. It's dangerous for his eyes.
a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) has to
- 7 He finish the project today; there is still a lot of time.
a) must b) doesn't have to c) is d) has to
- 8 We wear seat belts while driving.
a) must b) don't have to c) mustn't d) has to
- 9 Children talk to strangers.
a) must b) mustn't c) has to d) have to
- 10 She to feed her cat every day.
a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) has

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Students must (**wearing**) uniforms at school.
- 2 He must (**finished**) his project today because the teacher said it's urgent.
- 3 I (**have to**) go to bed early tonight. Tomorrow is the weekend.
- 4 The baby (**mustn't**) stay with an adult.
- 5 My brother (**have to**) clean his room today. He already did it.
- 6 He must (**to finish**) the project today.
- 7 Students (**has to**) bring their pens for the exam.
- 8 They (**doesn't have to**) come to school on Friday. It's a holiday.
- 9 They (**mustn't**) listen to the teacher.
- 10 Maher (**must**) stay up late tonight because he has an early class tomorrow.

Units 3 & 4



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3

suitcase	حقيرة سفر	open-air museum	متحف مفتوح (في الهواء الطلق)
campfire	نار المخيم (للتدفئة أو الطبخ)	pack	يحزم / يعد الأمتعة
temples	معابد	hike	المشي لمسافات طويلة
travel	يسافر	Nile cruise	رحلة نيلية
nature trail	مسار طبيعي	crowded	مزدحم
felucca	مركب شراعى صغير (فلوكة)	vehicle	مركبة / وسيلة نقل
beach	شاطئ	beautiful islands	جزر جميلة
ticket	تذكرة	sandcastles	قلاع رملية
scenery	المناظر الطبيعية	summer trip	رحلة صيفية
travel adventure book	كتاب مغامرات السفر	double check	يراجع / يتأكد مرة أخرى
carry	يحمل	forget	ينسى
wonderful chance	فرصة رائعة	Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية
the Pyramids	الأهرامات	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي
Egyptian temple	معبد مصرى	torch	مصباح يدوى (كشاف)
trip	رحلة	campsite	موقع التخييم
home country	البلد الأم / الوطن	school camping trip	رحلة تخييم مدرسية
tents	خيام	one-week vacation	إجازة لمدة أسبوع
adventure	مغامرة	tomb	قبر (مقبرة)
pharaohs	الفرعنة	a boat on the Nile River	قارب في نهر النيل

Unit 4

police dogs	كلاب بوليسية	prepare	يُجهز / يُحضّر
scarab beetles	خنفساء الجعران	guide dogs	كلاب إرشاد (للمكفوفين)
planting crops	زراعة المحاصيل	break down waste	يحلل الفضلات
dolphins	دلافين	carry heavy loads	يحمل أحمالاً ثقيلة
transport crops	ينقل المحاصيل	role	دور
containers	حاويات	officer	ضابط شرطة
supplies	إمدادات / مستلزمات	egrets	طيور البلسون
criminals	مجرمون	narrow streets	شوارع ضيقة
harm crops	يضر المحاصيل	blind people	المكفوفون
ripe	ناضج	raid	يهاجم بسرعة
rescue	ينقذ	routes	مسارات / طرق
sharp	حاد	beak	منقار
danger	خطر	messengers	رسل
hoppers	حشرات (جراد)	special job	وظيفة خاصة
falcons	صقور	damage crops	يدمر المحاصيل
smell	يشم	bother	يزعج
water buffaloes	جواميس الماء	active	نشط
ploughs	المحاريث	insects	حشرات
fields	حقول	feathers	ريش
milk a cow	ي حلب بقرة	catch mice	يصطاد الفئران
barn	حظيرة	guard	يحرص
grain	حبوب / قمح	wool	صوف
watch over	يراقب / يحرص	blankets	بطاطين / أغطية
sweaters	سترات صوفية	carts	عربات

Practice



on Vocabulary Units 3 & 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We need a to carry all our clothes for the trip.
a) ticket b) beach c) suitcase d) trail
- 2 If the bus is too we might not find a place to sit.
a) warm b) crowded c) dangerous d) simple
- 3 The farmer decided to his bags the night before he left for Cairo.
a) travel b) hike c) crowd d) pack
- 4 Before you can by plane, you must buy a ticket.
a) travel b) pack c) hike d) camp
- 5 We spent the day building sandcastles on the
a) campsite b) temple c) beach d) trail
- 6 The of Qaitbay is an old, strong building near the sea.
a) Bibliotheca b) Citadel c) Temple d) Pyramids
- 7 A bicycle is a small you can use to travel short distances.
a) vehicle b) fact c) ticket d) trail
- 8 When we set up tents, we are at a
a) beach b) house c) temple d) campsite
- 9 The teacher told us a cool about how the ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids.
a) vehicle b) fact c) trail d) temple
- 10 We collected wood to light a to keep us warm at night.
a) campfire b) campsite c) vehicle d) trail

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

tickets – travel – suitcase – crowded – beach

My father helped me pack my small blue (1) for the long trip to Alexandria. We had to buy two train (2) early because the train station is always very (3) in the morning. There are so many people! We plan to (4) by taxi to the hotel.

B)

Pyramids – Citadel – hike – Bibliotheca Alexandrina – the Sphinx

This is week, I am going to visit many famous places in Egypt with my family. In Alexandria, we want to visit two famous places. First, we will see the Qaitbay (1), which is a historical site. Then, we will visit the (2) where they keep many books. After that, we hope to travel to Giza to see the huge ancient (3) and (4)

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A is a strong animal that helps the farmer carry heavy things.
a) dolphin b) scarab c) falcon d) donkey
- 2 Farmers use a to break up the ground before planting.
a) cart b) plough c) container d) barn
- 3 The apples are and sweet, so we can eat them now.
a) warm b) heavy c) ripe d) tough
- 4 We keep the food safe inside a plastic when we go camping.
a) barn b) cart c) container d) sweater
- 5 A dog helps people who cannot see to walk safely.
a) guide b) water buffalo c) police d) guard
- 6 The thick hair from a sheep, called, is used to make clothes.
a) grain b) feather c) routes d) wool
- 7 The farmer's large building where the animals sleep is called a
a) beach b) route c) barn d) cart
- 8 A/ An is a type of bird that can carry letters and messages.
a) falcon b) pigeon c) egret d) chicken
- 9 The farmer is currently the cow to get fresh milk.
a) feeding b) guarding c) milking d) ploughing
- 10 The dog is the sheep to make sure they are safe.
a) milking b) carrying c) damaging d) watching over

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) plough – milking – water buffalo – police dogs – barn

My grandfather wakes up early to work on the family farm. This morning, he used the strong (1) to pull the heavy (2) across the large field. After ploughing, he started (3) the cow inside the (4) to get fresh milk.

B) criminals – guide dog – falcon – police dogs – hunting

My brother loves to read about special working animals. The strong (1) use their powerful noses to find (2) Another kind of dog, the (3), helps blind people walk safely in crowded areas. My brother also likes watching the (4) hunt for pests in the fields.

Units 3 & 4



B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 3

Planned Future "be + going to"

المستقبل المخطط له

We use "going to" when we talk about something we plan to do in the future.

Keywords: tomorrow, next week/month/year, soon, in the future, later.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject + **am/is/are** + **going to** + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. - I **am going to** visit the beach.

- Sally **is going to** pack her suitcase.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject + **am/is/are** + **not** + **going to** + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. - I **am not going to** forget my passport.

- We **are not going to** stay at home.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Am/Is/Are + subject + **going to** + (inf.) ...? الفعل في المصدر

e.g. A: **Are** they **going to** travel to Cairo?

B: **Yes**, they **are**. OR **No**, they **aren't**.

Wh-question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word + **am/is/are** + subject (الفاعل) + **going to** + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. A: What **is** he **going to** do?

B: He **is going to** pack his suitcase.

Unit 4

The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the "Present Simple" to talk about things that are always true, or that happen regularly like (habits, facts, and jobs).

Keywords: every day, usually, often, always, regularly, on Mondays.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I / You / We / They + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. We **work** in the city.

He/ She/ It + (inf.) + s/es/ies ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. He **sleeps** in the bedroom.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I/ You / We / They + don't + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. We **don't work** at night.

He/ She / It + doesn't + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. The water buffalo **doesn't work** in the city.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Do + I/you/ we/ they + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر?

Does + he/ she/ it + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر?

e.g. A: Do farmers **use** donkeys for transport? B: Yes, they **do**. OR No, they **don't**.

Wh-question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word + do/does + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. A: **Where** do you **live**?

B: I **live** in Cairo.

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the "Present Continuous" to talk about actions that are happening now.

Keywords: now, right now, at the moment, today, Look! Listen!

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject + **am/ is/ are** + (inf.) المصدر + **ing.**

- e.g.* - I **am working** right now.
 - The farmers **are planting** seeds today.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject + **am not/ isn't/ aren't** + (inf.) المصدر + **ing.**

- e.g.* - I **am not working** today.
 - It **isn't raining** now.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Am/ Is/ Are + subject + (inf.) المصدر + **ing...?**

- e.g.* A: **Is** Ahmed **sleeping** right now?
 B: **Yes**, he **is**. OR **No**, he **isn't**.

Wh-question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word + **am/ is/ are** + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) المصدر + **ing...?**

- e.g.* A: What **is** he **doing** now?
 B: He **is eating** lunch.

Practice



on Grammar Units 3 & 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They travel to Luxor next month.
a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to
- 2 Look at the clouds! It rain soon.
a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to
- 3 We attend the meeting tomorrow. We are too busy.
a) going to b) are going to c) am going to d) aren't going to
- 4 What do after graduation?
a) you going to b) are you going to c) you are going to d) going to
- 5 I am going a break from work next week.
a) took b) take c) taking d) to take
- 6 My sister a new phone with the money she saved.
a) am going to buy b) is going to buy c) are going to buy d) going to buy
- 7 He's very tired. He fall asleep any minute.
a) am going to b) are going to c) is going to d) going to
- 8 We invite all our neighbors to the party.
a) are going to b) is going to c) am going to d) going to
- 9 The cat is going off the table if you don't stop it!
a) jump b) jumping c) jumps d) to jump
- 10 My friends and I apply for that job next week.
a) are going to b) am going to c) is going to d) going to

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We are going (watch) the football match later tonight.
- 2 The company is going to (made) a new product soon.
- 3 He is going (playing) with his friends next weekend.
- 4 (Be) she going to tell him the truth later?
- 5 The children are going (build) a sandcastle at the beach tomorrow.
- 6 It's so cold. It's (go) snow.
- 7 (Be) your father going to come soon?
- 8 He (not) going to eat junk food today.
- 9 Is she going to (helps) her friend?
- 10 They (going to have) a picnic next Friday.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Why you looking sad at the moment?
a) are b) is c) do d) does
- 2 The sun now, so we can't see the stars.
a) shine b) shines c) are shining d) is shining
- 3 A doctor sick people.
a) are helping b) help c) helping d) helps
- 4 I to the library every Monday morning.
a) going b) go c) goes d) is going
- 5 The water buffaloes the plough now.
a) don't pull b) aren't pulling c) doesn't pull d) isn't pulling
- 6 My sister her friends every weekend.
a) is meeting b) meet c) meeting d) meets
- 7 Listen! Someone on the door.
a) knocks b) knock c) is knocking d) knocking
- 8 Snakes have legs.
a) don't b) aren't c) isn't d) doesn't
- 9 Farmers rice in the summer.
a) is growing b) growing c) grows d) grow
- 10 I for my exams at the moment.
a) study b) am studying c) studies d) are studying

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 She always (help) her friends with homework.
- 2 My father (work) in a bank.
- 3 He (not/like) spicy food.
- 4 They usually (has) lunch at 1:00 p.m.
- 5 The children (not/sleep) right now; they are playing.
- 6 Please stop that noise! I (try) to sleep.
- 7 My friend often (forget) my birthday.
- 8 He usually (go) jogging on weekends.
- 9 I (not/like) the hot weather.
- 10 The cat (drinks) milk at the moment.

Unit 5



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 5

planet	كوكب	Mercury	عطارد
Venus	الزهرة	Earth	الأرض
Mars	المريخ	Jupiter	المشتري
Saturn	زحل	Uranus	أورانوس
Neptune	نبتون	alien	كائن فضائي
classmates	زملاء الدراسة	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
rocket	صاروخ	the universe	الكون
project	مشروع	the largest	الأكبر
the Moon	القمر	famous	مشهور
shiny	لامع	round	مستدير / دائري
sigh	يتنهد	messy	فوضوي / غير مرتب
bright	ساطع / لامع	slide	زلاجة
soft clouds	سحب ناعمة	drier	أكثر جفافاً
glowing	متوهج / مشع	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
inspire	يلهم	Space Museum	متحف الفضاء
Red Planet	الكوكب الأحمر	describe	يصف
imagine	يتخيل	Solar System	المجموعة الشمسية
realize	يدرك / يفهم	galaxy	مجرة
planetarium	قبة فلكية	rings	حلقات
Milky Way	مجرة درب التبانة	astronaut	رائد فضاء
swing	أرجوحة	land	يهبط

Practice



on Vocabulary Unit 5

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sara wanted to young people to study science.
a) describe b) compare c) inspire d) realize
- 2 I like going fast down the at the park.
a) slide b) planet c) moon d) star ball
- 3 Saturn is famous for its bright, shiny
a) clouds b) balls c) sticks d) rings
- 4 Mars is a planet than Earth. Earth is more wet.
a) famous b) drier c) glowing d) more dangerous
- 5 The room is very because there are clothes and toys everywhere.
a) messy b) clean c) big d) small
- 6 The small star-ball was brightly in the dark sky.
a) glowing b) drawing c) messy d) sighing
- 7 Working together makes the job easier. This is called
a) drawing b) homework c) teamwork d) dreaming
- 8 The made a very loud noise when it took off.
a) alien b) rocket c) asteroid d) breeze
- 9 A person who travels to space is a/an
a) pilot b) scientist c) astronaut d) teacher
- 10 The was shiny and had round windows.
a) poster b) slide c) tablet d) spaceship

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

landed – alien – glowing – rocket – star-ball

The spaceship was shiny and had round windows. The (1) made a loud noise as it went up into the dark sky. Then, it (2) in a fun playground. The children ran to the swings and went down the slide. They saw a friendly (3) with big green eyes smiled at them. They played together with a (4) that rolled on the ground.

B)

galaxy – universe – inspired – Sun – planet

Last week, our class visited the planetarium. We learned that the (1) gives light and heat to all the planets. The guide showed us the Solar System and explained how it works. He said our (2) is called the Milky Way. That trip really (3) me to learn more about space. He also told us that the (4) is everything that exists, including all galaxies and stars.

Unit 5



B) Revision on Grammar

Comparatives and Superlatives المقارنات والتفضيلات

Short Adjectives

الصفات القصيرة (الصفة ذات المقطع الواحد)

Comparative adjectives

صفات المقارنة

We use comparatives to show how two things are different.

نستخدم المقارنات لإظهار مدى اختلاف شيئين.

For short adjectives, add (-er + than).

short adjective + صفة قصيرة + er + than

e.g. Mars is **smaller than** Earth.

كوكب المريخ أصغر من كوكب الأرض.

Superlative adjectives

صفات التفضيل

We use superlatives to show that one thing is the most in a group of three or more.

نستخدم صيغ التفضيل لإظهار أن شيئاً واحداً هو الأكثر في مجموعة مكونة من ثلاثة أو أكثر.

For short adjectives, add (the + -est).

the + short adjective + صفة قصيرة + est

e.g. Jupiter is **the largest** planet in the solar system.

كوكب المشتري هو أكبر كوكب في المجموعة الشمسية.



Special Tips

هناك بعض الصفات القصيرة تتغير تمامًا عند تحويلها إلى صفة مقارنة أو تفضيل وتحفظ كما هي مثل الآتي:

Short Adjectives	Comparatives	Superlatives
good	better than	the best
bad	worse than	the worst
far	further than	the furthest
	farther than	the farthest

e.g. Healthy food is **better than** fast food.

Fruit is **the best** snack for staying healthy.

Long Adjectives

الصفات الطويلة (مقطعين أو أكثر)

Comparative adjectives

صفات المقارنة

For long adjectives (two or more syllables), we don't add -er.

للصفات الطويلة (مقطعين أو أكثر) لا نضيف -er

more + long adjective + صفة طويلة + than

e.g. Venus is **more beautiful than** Earth.

كوكب الزهرة أكثر جمالاً من كوكب الأرض.

Superlative adjectives

صفات التفضيل

For long adjectives (two or more syllables), we don't add -est.

للصفات الطويلة (مقطعين أو أكثر) لا نضيف -est

the most + long adjective + صفة طويلة

e.g. Neptune is **the most distant** planet from the Sun.

كوكب نبتون أبعد كوكب عن الشمس.

Practice



on Grammar Unit 5

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Fruits are than chips.
a) healthy b) healthiest c) healthier d) most healthy
- 2 This exercise is than the one we did yesterday.
a) difficult b) more difficult c) the most difficult d) difficultly
- 3 The blue dress is beautiful than the red one.
a) many b) more c) much d) the most
- 4 The Sahara is desert in the world.
a) hot b) hotter c) the hottest d) the most hot
- 5 Learning Chinese is than learning Spanish.
a) easy b) easier c) the easiest d) more easy
- 6 Our project is We won the prize!
a) best b) better c) the best d) the most
- 7 Football is interesting than tennis.
a) much b) many c) more d) the most
- 8 August is usually month of the summer.
a) dry b) drier c) the driest d) more dry
- 9 Traveling by plane is than traveling by train.
a) quick b) quicker c) the quickest d) most quickly
- 10 Gold is one of expensive metals.
a) more b) the most c) much d) the more

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My school is (near) than the supermarket.
- 2 The final exam was (difficult) test of the year.
- 3 Today is (cold) than yesterday.
- 4 My handwriting is (good) than yours.
- 5 Rana is the (better) student in our class.
- 6 The elephant is the (big) land animal.
- 7 The Amazon River is the (long) river in the world.
- 8 Football is (popular) than basketball in our school.
- 9 The supermarket is (far) than the park.
- 10 Mercury is the (close) planet to the Sun.

Unit 6



Story Corner Offline but Happy

Unit 6

tablet	جهاز لوحي (تابلت)	sidewalk	رصيف
called out	نادى / صاح	sunset	غروب الشمس
bored	يشعر بالملل	whispered	همس
Wi-Fi	واى فاى	chalk	طباشير
breeze	نسيم	excited	متحمس
sunset	غروب الشمس	sticks	عصى / أعواد
lonely	وحيد	pretend shop	متجر وهمى
hide-and-seek	الغميضة (لعبة)	empty	فارغ

Definitions

tablet	جهاز لوحي (تابلت)	a small flat computer you can hold in your hands, like an iPad	حاسوب صغير مسطح يمكنك حمله فى يديك، مثل جهاز آيباد
Wi-Fi	واى فاى	wireless internet connection	اتصال إنترنت لاسلكى
level	مستوى	a stage in a game or activity where you must complete tasks to move forward	مرحلة فى لعبة أو نشاط يجب عليك إكمال المهام فيها للمضى قدماً.
excited	متحمس	very happy and full of energy	سعيد جداً وملىء بالطاقة
bored	يشعر بالملل (زهقان)	not interested or having nothing to do	غير مهتم أو ليس لديه شيء يفعل
lonely	وحيد	feeling sad because you are alone	الشعور بالحزن لأنك بمفردك
rode	ركب	to sit and move on a bike	أن تجلس وتحرك على دراجة
called out	نادى بصوت عالٍ	to shout so someone can hear you	أن تصرخ ليتمكن شخص ما من سماعك
whispered	همس	to speak very softly	أن تتحدث بنعومة شديدة
breeze	نسيم	a light, gentle wind	رياح خفيفة ولطيفة
sidewalk	رصيف	the path beside a road where people walk	المسار الموجود بجانب الطريق حيث يمشى الناس
chalk	طباشير	a soft white or colored stick used for writing or drawing	عصا بيضاء أو ملونة ناعمة تستخدم للكتابة أو الرسم

Practice



Story

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Tarek was excited because he wanted to
 a) visit the park b) play his video game
 c) draw on the sidewalk d) go to school
- 2 When Tarek saw the message "No Internet Connection!", he felt
 a) happy b) proud c) sad d) hungry
- 3 Tarek's friends invited him to
 a) go to the park b) play football c) visit the mall d) watch TV
- 4 What did Tarek and his friends draw on the sidewalk? -
 a) A house and a tree b) A car and a bridge
 c) A sun, a castle, and a rocket ship d) A park and a school
- 5 At the end of the story, Tarek decided that
 a) friendship is more fun than screens b) the internet is more important
 c) games are more fun than friends d) he didn't like going outside

2 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Tarek was happy when he couldn't connect to the Wi-Fi. ()
- 2 Tarek's friends invited him to go to the park. ()
- 3 Tarek ran inside immediately after hearing that the Wi-Fi was back. ()
- 4 Tarek missed laughing and talking with his friends. ()
- 5 Tarek decided that screens can replace the joy of friendship. ()

3 Read and complete the summary with the words in the box: **SB**

friends – tablet – Wi-Fi – bored – outside – fun – lesson

Tarek was very excited to play on his (1) On Friday morning, he grabbed his tablet, but the (2) stopped working. At first, he felt (3) and didn't know what to do. Then, he looked out the window and saw his (4) playing (5) He decided to join them, and together they laughed and had so much (6) At the end of the day, Tarek learned an important (7) that real friendship is better than any screen.

4 Answer the following questions:

1 What is the main theme or lesson learned in "Offline but Happy"?

.....

2 Why was Tarek excited on Friday morning?

.....

3 What problem did Tarek face when he tried to play his game?

.....

4 What did his mother suggest he should do instead of playing?

.....

5 How did Tarek feel when he first lost his internet connection?

.....

6 What made Tarek decide to go outside?

.....

7 What activities did Tarek and his friends do together?

.....

8 How did Tarek's feelings change after playing with his friends?

.....

9 What did his mother tell him later that afternoon?

.....

10 Why did Tarek choose to stay outside even after the Wi-Fi came back?

.....

11 What did Tarek say about his tablet at the end of the story?

.....

12 Why did Tarek enjoy spending time with his friends?

.....

13 What did Tarek and his friends use to draw?

.....

14 What did Tarek learn at the end of the story?

.....

15 What was the weather like when Tarek went out to play?

.....



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة			
Present		Past	Past
ask	يسأل	asked	paint يدهن / يرسم painted
avoid	يتجنب	avoided	play يلعب / يعزف played
call	يُنادي	called	plough يحرق ploughed
carry	يحمل	carried	practice يمارس practiced
check	يفحص	checked	receive يستلم received
climb	يتسلق	climbed	recognize يتعرف على recognized
compare	يقارن	compared	rest يستريح rested
cooperate	يتعاون	cooperated	share يشارك shared
create	يُنشئ	created	shout يصرخ shouted
decide	يقرر	decided	smile يبتسم smiled
decorate	يزين	decorated	solve يحل solved
donate	يتبرع	donated	stop يتوقف stopped
exercise	يتمرن	exercised	thank يشكر thanked
explain	يشرح	explained	travel يسافر traveled
frown	يعبس	frowned	visit يزور visited
guess	يخمن	guessed	wait ينتظر waited
help	يساعد	helped	want يريد / يرغب wanted
improve	يُحسن	improved	wash يغسل washed
jump	يقفز	jumped	whisper يهمس whispered
laugh	يضحك	laughed	worry يقلق worried
describe	يصف	described	guard يحرس / يحمي guarded
live	يعيش	lived	expect يتوقع expected
look	ينظر	looked	compare يقارن compared
love	يُحب	loved	match يطابق matched
miss	يفتقد	missed	happen يحدث happened
move	ينتقل	moved	end ينتهي ended
need	يحتاج	needed	allow يسمح allowed
organize	ينظم	organized	decorate يزين decorated
pack	يحزم	packed	contain يحتوي contained

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
make يصنع / يجعل	made	begin يبدأ	began
meet يلتقي	met	build يبني	built
put يضع	put	buy يشتري	bought
read يقرأ	read	can يستطيع	could
run يركض	ran	come يأتي	came
say يقول	said	do (does) يفعل	did
see يرى	saw	eat يأكل	ate
sing يُغنى	sang	feel يشعر	felt
sit يجلس	sat	find يجد	found
slide يتزلق	slid	fly يطير	flew
swim يسبح	swam	forget ينسى	forgot
take يأخذ	took	get يحصل / يصبح	got
teach يُعلم / يُدرس	taught	give يعطي	gave
tell يخبر	told	go يذهب	went
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	grow ينمو	grew
wear يرتدي	wore	have / has يمتلك / لديه	had
win يفوز	won	know يعرف	knew
write يكتب	wrote	leave يغادر / يترك	left
shake يهز	shook	bring يحضر	brought
spend يقضي	spent	choose يختار	chose
become يصبح	became	think يعتقد	thought
hurt يؤلم	hurt	pay يدفع	paid

Final Tests

Test 1

30



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- (1) Omar plays board games with his friends. (.....) (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- (2) He plays his games before finishing his chores. (.....)
- (3) His sister's hobbies are skating and singing. (.....)
- (4) The family talent show is boring. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- (1) We had a/an about our favorite hobbies.
a) teamwork b) discussion c) instrument d) chore
- (2) He got a after watching the screen for too long.
a) cough b) sore throat c) headache d) fever
- (3) We are going to Ali next weekend.
a) meet b) met c) meets d) meeting
- (4) My bag is than your bag.
a) big b) more big c) bigger d) biggest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

swimming – reading – painting – singing – skating

Laila loves spending her free time at home. She enjoys (1)..... colorful drawings of nature. Her paintings are really amazing! Her brother, Yassin prefers (2)..... in the park. Sometimes, they all enjoy (3)..... songs together. On weekends, their father relaxes by (4)..... his favorite book. Their mother likes to watch TV.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

My name is Lara. I love painting and drawing every day because they allow me to be creative. My favorite hobby is playing board games with my friends, as it's fun and teaches us teamwork. I also enjoy crafting and making things from paper, like small

gifts for my family. When I was younger, I couldn't draw well, but now I can draw and paint beautiful pictures. Hobbies make me happy and help me learn new skills. I believe that with practice, anyone can discover a talent they love. These activities are a wonderful part of my life.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The general idea of the text is about
a) Lara's family b) Lara's hobby
c) Lara's friends d) Lara's school
- 2** Hobbies help us
a) sleep all day b) learn new skills
c) eat fast d) go shopping

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who does Lara play with?
- 4 What does Lara love?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 We are (go) to visit the beach next week.
- 2 This bag is (heavy) than that one.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 excited – puzzles – Solving – makes – always – us.
- 2 telescope – Can – help – the stars – a – us see?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 milking cows is a farm job
- 2 did the examination take too long

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

“Camping in the desert”

mountains – campfire – stars



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 Rana spends her free time painting pictures. (.....) (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- 2 Rana enjoys making colorful flowers. (.....)
- 3 Her brother prefers playing the guitar. (.....)
- 4 Their parents say these activities are boring. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Farmers grow in their fields.
a) cars b) crops c) birds d) clothes
- 2 eat insects and help the farmers.
a) Foxes b) Dogs c) Cats d) Egrets
- 3 He wake up early because he works at 6 a.m.
a) has to b) have to c) doesn't have to d) mustn't
- 4 When she was five, she read simple stories.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

headache – clinic – better – swimming – medicine

Fady woke up early, but he didn't feel well. He had a bad (1)..... and felt very tired. He didn't go to school. His mother took him to the (2)..... to see the doctor. The doctor gave him some (3)..... to help him get (4)..... . After two days, Fady felt great and went back to school again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Yesterday, Ahmed went to the clinic because he had a sore throat and a bad cough. In the waiting room, he felt quite tired. Soon, the nurse called his name and took him to the examination room. The doctor checked his temperature and said, "You have a fever, but it's not serious. You must rest at home." He wrote a note for some medicine, so Ahmed's mother went to the pharmacy to buy it. After two days of rest and medicine, Ahmed felt much better and was happy to return to school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "fever" means
a) high body temperature b) headache
c) medicine d) cold
- 2 The doctor said the illness was
a) serious b) dangerous c) not serious d) strange

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did Ahmed go to the clinic?
- 4 What did the doctor tell Ahmed to do?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 This is (more) beautiful place I have ever visited.
- 2 Shhh! The baby (be sleep) in the next room.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 do – some – paper – I – can – with – crafting.

- 2 you – planetarium – Did – the – yesterday – visit?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 i need medicine for my fever

- 2 why is the first aid kit important

8 Write a fiction story of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"A trip to space"

rocket – spaceship – planets



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Salma woke up with a sore throat and a headache. (.....)
- 2 Her mother took her to the park. (.....)
- 3 The doctor told her to drink warm water. (.....)
- 4 After a few days, Salma felt much better. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 They bring their books every day.
a) has to b) have to c) have d) has
- 2 The ancient kings were buried in
a) towers b) tombs c) castles d) rooms
- 3 A is used for walking through forests.
a) trail b) bridge c) tunnel d) river
- 4 We answer the question in the exam. It was too difficult.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

campsite – trip – trail – campfire – sandcastle

During the summer holiday, Omar stayed at a (1)..... . Every night, he sat by the (2)..... and roasted chicken. He went hiking on a nature (3)..... in the forest. It was his first camping (4)..... , and he really enjoyed it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

My name is Yara. Last weekend, I had a wonderful time enjoying my favorite hobbies. In the morning, I went cycling with my family in the park, which was very fun. Later, we played board games and solved puzzles together. I also love crafting, so I built a small model house from paper. I felt so excited and happy sharing these activities. Hobbies like these help me spend my free time in a good way, and I believe they make our family time more enjoyable and special.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "cycling" means
a) riding a bike b) running c) swimming d) painting
- 2 Hobbies help me
a) waste time b) spend free time well
c) sleep more d) eat snacks

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who did Yara go cycling with?
- 4 What did Yara build?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 They (be) not having dinner at the moment.
- 2 We often (went) to the beach in summer.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 games – I – like – board – playing – daily.
.....
- 2 Planet – Mars – called – is – Red – the.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what do farmers feed their animals
- 2 the Earth moves around the Sun

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"First aid kit"

nurse – bandages – scissors



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Nader packed his suitcase because he wanted to stay at home. (.....)
- 2 Nader planned to visit the temples and tombs in Aswan. (.....)
- 3 The city was quiet when Nader arrived. (.....)
- 4 Nader enjoyed the Nile cruise and took many pictures with his family. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Making things with paper is called
a) cutting b) crafting c) folding d) printing
- 2 The farmer uses a machine called a to turn over the soil.
a) tablet b) TV c) phone d) plough
- 3 You touch the hot pot. It's dangerous!
a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) could
- 4 She visit her grandparents next Friday.
a) is going to b) are going to c) am going d) was going to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

dangerous – safe – bandage – treatment – permission

Sara cut her finger while cooking. Her father cleaned it and used a (1)..... to cover it. He reminded her that knives can be (2)..... and to always ask for (3)..... before using them. Everyone has to stay (4)..... at home.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

My name is Lama. Last summer, I carefully packed my suitcase with clothes and my camera for a trip with my family. We traveled by plane to a beautiful city abroad. It was very exciting to see the crowded airport and finally get our tickets. I enjoyed visiting new places, like an ancient citadel and a sandy beach. The trip was amazing, and I can't wait for our next adventure. Traveling is one of my favorite hobbies.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "suitcase" means a
a) bag b) camera c) ticket d) passport
- 2 They traveled
a) by bus b) by plane c) by bicycle d) on foot

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who went on the trip with Lama?
- 4 What did Lama enjoy doing?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Hurry up! Everyone (wait) for you.
- 2 Gameela is the (better) student in class.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 you – Where – did – travel – summer – last?
.....
- 2 favorite – is – Cycling – activity – outdoor – my.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 my bag was heavy with clothes
- 2 how do hobbies teach life skills

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"Going on a hike"

camping – hike – trail



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 Police dogs help officers find criminals. (.....) (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- 2 Guide dogs help blind people walk safely. (.....)
- 3 Farmers use horses to pull ploughs in the fields. (.....)
- 4 These animals make people's lives harder. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Helping your parents is a way of your family.
a) avoiding b) caring for c) ignoring d) leaving
- 2 An elephant is a horse.
a) bigger than b) big c) biggest d) the bigger
- 3 A can climb walls easily.
a) dog b) gecko c) frog d) bird
- 4 They to bring their books every day.
a) has b) must c) mustn't d) have

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

hiking – swimming – crafting – talent show – cycling

Omar enjoys many hobbies. He likes (1)..... with paper at home. He enjoys (2)..... to school every day. On Fridays, he joins the school (3)..... to show his skills. He also likes (4)..... in the sea. He travels to the beach with his family whenever he can.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Last week, Sara felt very tired and had a bad stomachache. Her mother was worried and took her to the clinic right away. They sat in the waiting room before the nurse called them into the examination room. The doctor checked her carefully and said, "You have a fever. You must rest at home and eat healthy food." He gave Sara some medicine from the pharmacy and advised her to drink plenty of warm water. After three days of following the doctor's orders, Sara felt much better and was happy to go back to school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "stomachache" means
a) headache b) pain in the stomach c) sore throat d) fever
- 2 The doctor said that Sara must
a) exercise b) rest and eat healthy food
c) take medicine only d) swim

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who took Sara to the clinic?
- 4 How did Sara feel after following the doctor's orders?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 That is (tall) building in our city.
- 2 The library (open) at the same time every day.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 me – makes – Painting – happy – feel – very.

- 2 campfire – sleep – Did – the – you – near?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 cycling is my favorite outdoor activity
- 2 what does an astronaut wear daily

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"Packing for travel"

pack – suitcase – a travel ticket



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- (1) The students are learning about the solar system. (.....) (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- (2) They see Mercury, Venus, and the Earth. (.....)
- (3) An astronaut explains how he flew in a spaceship. (.....)
- (4) Everyone looks bored at the big screen showing the Milky Way and stars. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- (1) Children sometimes help their parents with
 a) homework b) chores c) drawings d) projects
- (2) The place was very with tourists.
 a) noisy b) empty c) crowded d) clean
- (3) When grandpa was younger, he run really fast.
 a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- (4) Today is yesterday.
 a) cold b) colder than c) the coldest d) coldest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

ticket – citadel – towers – campfire – sandcastle

The children enjoyed their holiday at the beach. They built a huge (1)..... with (2)..... and walls. In the evening, they sat around a warm (3)..... and told stories. The next day, they bought a (4)..... to visit another city by bus. Finally, they explored an ancient citadel nearby and learned about its history.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

My name is Hani. Last night, I used a telescope to see the stars in our galaxy. I saw the Moon shining brightly and imagined walking on its surface like an astronaut. I tried to find other planets, like Red Mars or giant Jupiter, the largest in our solar system. Space is amazing and bigger than we can imagine. I want to learn more about all the planets and the brave astronauts who explore the universe. It was the most exciting way to spend an evening.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hani used a/an to see stars in our galaxy.
a) astronaut b) telescope c) planet d) moon
- 2 The underlined word "giant" means very
a) small b) bright c) big d) scary

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is the largest planet in our solar system?
- 4 What did Hani imagine?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Listen! Someone (knock) on the door.
- 2 Children (mustn't) listen to their parents.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 every – cows – the – Who – milks – day?
.....
- 2 planets – The – solar – has – system – eight.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 the farmer feeds the hungry animals
.....
- 2 The milky Way is very large
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"At the clinic"

sick – doctor – medicine

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 The solar system has eight planets. (.....) (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- 2 Jupiter is the smallest planet. (.....)
- 3 An astronaut can travel in a rocket. (.....)
- 4 The universe is full of mystery and beauty. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Doctors work in a/an room to check patients.
a) classroom b) waiting c) examination d) office
- 2 A is a bag used to carry clothes when we travel.
a) cart b) suitcase c) box d) basket
- 3 Summer is season of the year in my country.
a) hot b) hotter than c) the hottest d) hottest than
- 4 I start a new book this evening.
a) am going to b) is going to c) are going to d) going to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

perform – solving – paper – active – swimming

Hobbies are activities that make our free time enjoyable. Some students love painting or crafting with (1)....., while others prefer playing the piano, singing, or (2)..... puzzles. Outdoor hobbies, such as cycling or skating, keep people (3)..... and healthy. Many schools organize talent shows where students (4)..... for their friends and family.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

In the fields, you can often see egrets following buffaloes. These elegant birds eat insects and hoppers that bother the animals and damage the crops. Right now, on many farms, an egret is standing near a buffalo performing its natural job. They can raid quickly with their sharp beaks. Farmers appreciate this because the birds provide a helpful service, protecting their plants from harmful insects without needing chemicals. This shows how egrets and humans can work together.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "damage" means
 a) protect b) water c) plough d) harm
- 2 The egrets eat insects and
 a) crops b) grain c) birds d) hoppers

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who benefits from the egrets?
- 4 How do egrets help farmers?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 You (not / must) smoke because it is unhealthy.
- 2 She can (plays) the piano very well.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 many – How – bags – take – did – you?

- 2 find – Police – help – criminals – dogs – to.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 when did your train leave cairo?

- 2 cows give milk and sheep give wool

8 Write a fiction story of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"Camping in the desert"

campsite – friends – campfire

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 Mona made a survey about hobbies at school. (.....) (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- 2 Most students said they liked cycling. (.....)
- 3 The teacher said hobbies help students spend time wisely. (.....)
- 4 Mona learned that nobody has a special interest. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 A is an event where people perform their skills.
a) campfire b) sport c) talent show d) class
- 2 My house is my friend's house.
a) smaller than b) small c) the smallest d) most small
- 3 They play football after school tomorrow.
a) is going to b) are going to c) was going to d) were going to
- 4 A helps blind people walk safely.
a) police dog b) pet c) guide dog d) hunting dog

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

hobby – encourage – board – excitement – cycling

Every weekend, Ali enjoys doing his favorite hobby. He likes (1)..... in the park and playing (2)..... games with his friends. They all feel full of (3)..... after spending time together. These activities teach teamwork, caring for others, and (4)..... discussion and sharing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Omar was excited to visit his uncle's farm. He saw many animal helpers. In the field, strong water buffaloes were pulling a plough to prepare the soil for crops. Nearby, a herd of sheep was eating grass. A guard dog was watching over them carefully to keep them safe. Omar's uncle explained that the sheep's thick wool is used to make warm sweaters. He also showed Omar how donkeys carry heavy loads of grain. Omar learned that farm animals are hard workers and that we must always be kind to them.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The general idea of the text is about
 a) the grain
 b) the job of farm animals
 c) Omar's uncle
 d) eating grass
- 2** The underlined word "loads" means
 a) rides for children
 b) heavy things that are carried
 c) food for the animals
 d) sounds that animals make

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do the water buffaloes do?
- 4 Who showed Omar the donkeys?
- 5 What are sheep useful for?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Today is (sunny) than yesterday.
2 She (not going to) travel next week.

4

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- ① hospital - My - took - me - mother - the - to.

2

- 2 suitcase – my – I – night – packed – last.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1 the doctor came late to his clinic
- 2 did you enjoy your camping trip

4

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

“The train journey”

train ride – fast – crowded



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Khaled fell off his bike and had a small accident. (.....)
- 2 Khaled's hand was bleeding after he fell. (.....)
- 3 His father cleaned the cut and put a plaster on it. (.....)
- 4 Khaled felt happy because his father knew how to help him safely. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 He had a His head hurts.
a) headache b) stomachache c) sore throat d) fever
- 2 like wheat and rice are used to make bread.
a) Sugar b) Fruit c) Grains d) Milk
- 3 Ali is his lessons right now.
a) study b) studying c) studies d) studied
- 4 Yesterday, I open the door because the key was broken.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

rocket – galaxy – spaceship – explore – telescope

The astronauts prepared for a space mission early in the morning. They entered the (1)..... and checked all the controls. The (2)..... was ready to launch into the sky. They could see a distant (3)..... . The Sun, Moon, and planets make space exciting to (4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Fady enjoys solving puzzles with his friends every evening because it is a fun challenge. Sometimes, they also do crafting with paper and make small gifts for their families. Playing board games is another fun activity they love after school. Last year, he couldn't solve difficult puzzles, but now he can finish them quickly. These hobbies help him relax, learn teamwork, and enjoy his free time in a good way. Fady believes that having hobbies brings a lot of excitement and enjoyment to our lives.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined words "solving puzzles" mean
a) putting pieces together b) painting
c) singing d) running
- 2 They after school.
a) play board games b) sleep
c) swim d) cook

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who does Fady solve puzzles with?
- 4 How do hobbies help Fady?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 We are going to (meets) at the park tomorrow.
- 2 The dog (sleep) under the tree every day.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 visited – yesterday – We – the – evening – planetarium.
.....
- 2 Nurses – sure – clean – make – the first aid kit – always – is.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 mars is smaller than Jupiter
- 2 what did you buy from the market

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"Helping the injured"

clean – wound – medicine

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Lina and her friends went camping near the river. (.....)
- 2 They built a treehouse near the river. (.....)
- 3 They sang songs around the campfire at night. (.....)
- 4 They went on a hike in the evening. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Birds fly, but penguins can't.
a) can b) could c) couldn't d) can't
- 2 Farmers keep animals in the
a) barn b) shop c) school d) garden
- 3 A/An travels to space.
a) doctor b) astronaut c) teacher d) engineer
- 4 The weather is cloudy. It rain today.
a) is going to b) are going to c) am going to d) was going to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

Guard dogs – pest – insects – barn – falcon

Yesterday, farmers and animals were busy at the village. The birds were very active in the morning. A (1)..... flew over the farm to hunt for prey. The farmers stored hay and grain in the (2)..... . In homes, geckos climbed on walls and ate (3)..... . (4)..... ran around the sheep to protect them.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

I like skating in the park every weekend because it makes me feel active and free. My friends also enjoy cycling and running outside with me; it's our favorite way to spend time together. Sometimes, when we are indoors, we play exciting board games, which is a different kind of fun. We have a discussion to choose which game to play first. These hobbies make our free time fun and interesting, and they are a wonderful part of our friendship. I believe everyone should have a hobby they love.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "discussion" means
a) hobby b) talk c) test d) message
- 2 Friends enjoy running
a) outside b) now
c) indoors d) every day

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where does the writer skate?
- 4 Why does the writer enjoy skating?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 He (like) chocolate ice cream.
- 2 Ahmed is (brave) boy in the class.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 suitcase – too – The – carry – is – to – heavy.

- 2 crowded – The – was – plane – yesterday – very.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what did the nurse do yesterday
- 2 dalida enjoys solving puzzles in her free time

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"My favorite hobby"

painting – help – relaxing

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 Egrets help farmers by eating pests.
- 2 These birds are black.
- 3 The birds eat mosquitoes and hoppers.
- 4 Farmers say these birds are very rare.

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

(.....)

(.....)

(.....)

(.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 You should visit the to buy your medicine.
a) market b) shop c) pharmacy d) hospital
- 2 A/An is a creature from another planet.
a) bird b) alien c) astronaut d) explorer
- 3 Mount Everest is mountain in the world.
a) high b) higher than c) the highest d) highest than
- 4 We travel to Luxor this winter.
a) are going to b) is going to c) am going to d) was going to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

landed – relatives – dream – spaceship – alien

It was a bright and quiet morning at the park. Suddenly, a (1)..... appeared in the sky, followed by a rocket. It (2)..... gently near the playground. A small (3)..... with glowing eyes stepped out, then I woke up and found out it was just a (4).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Tom felt very sick and had a bad headache and a runny nose. His father was worried and decided to take him to the clinic to see a doctor. In the examination room, the doctor checked his temperature, looked in his eyes and ears, and saw that he had a sore throat. The doctor said, "You have a cold, but it is not serious. You must take this medicine from the pharmacy and rest at home." After two days of following the doctor's advice, Tom felt much better and could play with his friends again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "headache" means
a) pain in the head b) stomach pain
c) fever d) cough
- 2 The doctor said Tom had a
a) fever b) cold c) broken arm d) toothache

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who took Tom to the doctor?
- 4 What did the doctor tell Tom to do?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 He can (drew) a picture very well.
- 2 You (mustn't) take your medicine on time.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 desert – find – Can – you – trail – the?
.....
- 2 campfire – campsite – warm – has – a – The.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 did the astronauts travel in a rocket
- 2 i must take the right medicine

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"Animals that help people"

police dogs – pigeons – cows

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 Ramy imagined flying in a spaceship.
- 2 He saw an alien holding a glowing star-ball.
- 3 The alien frowned at Ramy.
- 4 Ramy felt sad about his journey.

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

(.....)

(.....)

(.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 My brother buy a new bicycle soon.
a) is going to b) are going to c) am going to d) were going to
- 2 During the show, every student wanted to on stage.
a) sleep b) hide c) eat d) perform
- 3 People can blood to help sick patients.
a) donate b) take c) hide d) lose
- 4 Malak is student in the class.
a) smart b) smarter than c) the smartest d) smartest than

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

teacher – permission – kit – injured – better

If a student gets hurt, the nurse has to check the first aid kit and help them right away. Students must tell a (1)..... or the nurse when someone is (2)..... . We mustn't open the first aid kit without (3)..... because some things inside can be dangerous. Nurses must make sure the (4)..... is always clean, ready, and full.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Hobbies are activities that make our free time enjoyable. Some students love painting or crafting with paper, while others prefer playing the piano, singing, or solving puzzles. Outdoor hobbies, such as cycling or skating, keep people active and healthy. Many schools organize talent shows where students perform for their friends and family. These activities teach teamwork, caring for others, and encourage discussion and sharing. Doing hobbies regularly makes us excited and happy. Teachers often do surveys to understand students' favorite hobbies and arrange events that they like.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 An outdoor hobby mentioned in the text is
a) painting b) crafting with paper
c) cycling d) playing the piano
- 2 Many schools organize for students.
a) a trip to the beach b) a science fair
c) a talent show d) a workshop

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How do hobbies help students in their daily lives?
- 4 What do teachers do to understand students' favorite hobbies?
.....
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 He (don't have to) clean his room today.
2 Look! She (run) fast now.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 Nahla - How - you - feeling - today, - are?

- 2 galaxy – is – Milky – called – Our – the – Way.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1 What is the surface of mars like
- 2 police dogs are very brave and smart

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

"My favorite planet"

Mars – solar system – space



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The receptionist told Hany to go straight to the doctor. (.....)
- 2 Hany had a high fever. (.....)
- 3 The doctor said his illness was very serious. (.....)
- 4 Hany went to the pharmacy to get his medicine. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 A helps cover small cuts or wounds.
a) puzzle b) plaster c) paper d) tape
- 2 They bought a to enter the museum.
a) ticket b) map c) bag d) key
- 3 I swim when I was three years old.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 4 A cheetah is animal on land.
a) the fastest b) faster than c) fast d) fastest than

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

skills – spend – stories – finish – swim

Hobbies show how people grow. Many children can draw, paint, or write (1)..... now, but when they were younger, they couldn't do these activities well. Some people can (2)..... puzzles quickly today, but before they could only place a few pieces. In the past, children could (3)..... more time outside running, skating, or fishing. Today, we can choose from many hobbies that help us learn (4)..... for life.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now. On the screen, a white egret is standing in a field. Suddenly, the egret raids quickly with its sharp beak. It is catching hoppers that eat the rice plants. These birds often work alongside water buffaloes in the fields. They sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs to get a better view. The egret eats flies that bother the buffaloes. Farmers

don't need to use many chemicals because of these birds. Farmers appreciate these beautiful birds because they provide natural insect control.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I am watching a
a) movie b) story c) play d) documentary
- 2 eat the rice plants.
a) Buffaloes b) Egrets c) Hoppers d) Birds

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do egrets eat?
- 4 Why do farmers appreciate egrets?
- 5 Why do egrets stand on buffaloes' backs?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 She (go) to school every day.
- 2 Her dress is (expensive) than mine.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 does – What – every – Rana – morning – do?
.....
- 2 campfire – We – sat – warm – the – around.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 did you see the Milky Way galaxy
.....
- 2 puzzles help improve my life skills
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"A visit to the doctor"

headache – nurse – doctor

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Falcons and pigeons were once used to carry messages. (.....)
- 2 Farmers grow crops with the help of horses. (.....)
- 3 Farmers use barns to keep grain. (.....)
- 4 The scarab beetle is a very rare animal in Egypt. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 The helps people check in when they arrive at the clinic.
a) patient b) receptionist c) doctor d) teacher
- 2 We keep the first aid kit ready for
a) accidents b) parties c) games d) clubs
- 3 She play the guitar now, because her hand is broken.
a) can b) could c) can't d) couldn't
- 4 I clean my room after lunch.
a) am going to b) are going to c) is going to d) going to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

cart – transport – notebook – plough – loads

Farmers prepare the land carefully every season. They use a (1)..... to turn the soil before planting. They push a heavy (2)..... to the market full of goods. Donkeys carry heavy (3)..... through villages and to markets. They (4)..... crops, water containers, and supplies through narrow streets.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Some animals have real jobs. Police dogs are very brave and smart. They help officers catch criminals and find lost people, using their strong noses to smell things far away. Guide dogs also have jobs; they help blind people walk safely, move around, and cross streets without getting hurt. Horses help people feel calm and happy, making someone who is sad or scared feel much better. Finally,

rescue dolphins in some countries help people who are in danger in the sea. Helping others is a very special job for all these animals.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 are known for helping people feel calm and happy.
a) Police dogs b) Rescue dolphins c) Guide dogs d) Horses
- 2 The underlined word "brave" means
a) hungry b) not afraid c) scary d) weak

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why are the dogs that help police officers successful at catching criminals?
.....
- 4 What is the guide dogs' job?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Mount Everest is (high) mountain in the world.
- 2 Noura never (watch) TV before dinner.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 many – Our – solar – planets – system – has.
.....
- 2 cruise – I – ticket – need – a – the – for.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 we saw the star glowing brightly today
- 2 Are you going to travel to Rome on monday

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"Feeling sick"

How do you feel? – Where do you go? – What treatment do you get?

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 Layla loves cycling, painting, and singing. (.....)
 2 When she feels tired, she takes medicine for her headache. (.....)
 3 During holidays, she travels with her friends to the beach. (.....)
 4 At night, they look at the stars. (.....)

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Salma takes of nature with her camera.
 a) photos b) meals c) songs d) messages
 2 We keep in the first aid kit.
 a) toys b) fruits c) bandages d) pencils
 3 My room is my brother's room.
 a) big b) bigger than c) the biggest d) more big
 4 He start a new job next winter.
 a) is going to b) are going to c) am going to d) going to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

accidents – pharmacy – injury – first aid – television

Omar went on a camping trip last week. He had a small (1)..... on his hand. His mother used a (2)..... kit to clean the cut. She reminded him that (3)..... can happen while camping. Later, she went to the (4)..... to buy more medicine.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Next weekend, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. Our teacher told us that those who want to go on the trip need to receive their bus tickets today. She said the campsite is going to be crowded because another school is visiting too. When we arrive, we are going to set up our tents near some amazing mountains. Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Our class is going to travel next
a) weekend b) month c) year d) Monday
- 2 The campsite is going to be
a) free b) crowded c) closed d) big

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where are they going to travel to?
- 4 What is the teacher going to teach them?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 He (not going to) call his friend today.
- 2 This exercise is (easy) than the last one.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 sell – Does – pharmacy – the – medicine?
.....
- 2 solar – Venus – is – of – part – system – our.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 jupiter is bigger than planet Earth
.....
- 2 where can we find scissors now
.....

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

“The importance of hobbies”

What hobbies do you enjoy? – How do hobbies make you feel?
– How can hobbies help you in life?

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 Hobbies are activities we do at school. (.....) (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- 2 Hobbies help us relax and stay happy. (.....)
- 3 Hobbies, like drawing, cycling, or solving puzzles, teach us new skills. (.....)
- 4 Hobbies make our lives better by keeping us active and smart. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 We mustn't open the first aid kit without
 a) money b) permission c) bags d) homework
- 2 Winter is season of the year.
 a) cold b) colder than c) the coldest d) coldest than
- 3 The bus was very because many families were traveling.
 a) empty b) slow c) quiet d) crowded
- 4 Omar is not going to today.
 a) swam b) swimming c) swim d) swims

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

horses – falcons – ploughs – Geckos – Pigeons

In Egypt, many animals help people in useful ways. Water buffaloes pull (1)....., while donkeys carry heavy loads to markets. (2)..... act as messengers, and (3)..... protect crops by hunting small animals. (4)..... climb on walls and eat insects. Each animal has an important job that supports people and keeps the environment healthy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

I am Eslam. Last weekend, I went on a trip to the planetarium with my class. We learned about the solar system and how planets move around the Sun. I was excited to see Mars and Saturn in the models. The teacher also explained that our planet is part of a huge galaxy called the Milky Way. We also learned about the Moon. Visiting the planetarium helped me understand space better and made me curious to explore more about planets, stars, and the universe.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The underlined word "planetarium" means a place where you
 a) watch movies b) learn about planets and stars
 c) play games d) eat food
- 2** Eslam was to see Mars and Saturn in the models.
 a) bored b) sleepy c) tired d) excited

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who explained about the Milky Way and the planets?
- 4 Which planets did Eslam see in the models?
- 5 How did the trip help Eslam?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 This painting is (colorful) than the one in the museum.
- 2 He plays football very well now, but last year he (can) do it.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 yesterday – colorful – a – I – poster – drew.
- 2 draw – picture – did – Where – Hamza – a?

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1 farida used many color pencils last monday.
- 2 what did the alien look like

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

“My favorite hobby”

free time – drawing – activities



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

- 1 The nurse's room has a small first aid kit. (.....) (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- 2 The first aid kit contains bandages, plasters, and scissors. (.....)
- 3 Students must keep silent if someone is hurt. (.....)
- 4 We must play carefully to avoid getting hurt. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 You eat too much candy.
a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) has to
- 2 a scarab beetle make fertilizer?
a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Are
- 3 His body temperature is higher than normal. He has a
a) stomachache b) headache c) fever d) cold
- 4 People often food to help poor families.
a) donate b) eat c) throw d) hide

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

crowded – citadel – tickets – travel – suitcase

I went on a trip to the beach. I packed my (1)..... with clothes and a towel. We had (2)..... for the bus. The bus was very (3)....., but we were happy to (4)..... together. At the beach, we played in the sand and swam in the water. It was a fun day, and I enjoyed the sun and the sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Some animals have real jobs, just like people. Police dogs are brave and smart; they help officers find lost people and catch criminals using their strong noses. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely and move around without getting hurt. Horses can make people feel calm and happy, helping those who are sad or scared. In some countries, rescue dolphins save people in danger in the sea. These animals show that helping others is an important and special job. They work hard and make life safer and better for humans.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The general idea of the text is about animals that
 a) have special jobs b) live in the zoo
 c) harm old people d) live in the forest
- 2** Spending time with horses can help people who are sad or
 a) happy b) scared c) tall d) hungry

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How do police dogs find criminals?
- 4 Who helps blind people walk safely?
- 5 Why are these animals important?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We (be) going to see the ancient temples this weekend.
2 This is the (cold) day of the year.

4

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

- 1 use - Do - transportation - donkeys - farmers - for?

2

- 2 insects – help – eating – farmers – Egrets – by.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Many scientists study jupiter and Mars

4

- 2 what is the donkey carrying right now

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"A day on the farm"

What animals are on the farm? – Where does the farmer keep the animals?
How are the animals useful?



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Water buffaloes help to prepare fields for crops. (.....)
- 2 Donkeys carry heavy loads to big cities. (.....)
- 3 Pigeons carry notes and letters between places. (.....)
- 4 These animals play unimportant roles in villages. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 Samir likes drawing, so he every day.
a) paints b) cycles c) writes d) sings
- 2 Our galaxy is called the
a) High Way b) Milky Road c) Milky Way d) Red Planet
- 3 He solve the puzzle. It was easy for him.
a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
- 4 She take the medicine three times a day as the doctor said.
a) have to b) has to c) mustn't d) don't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

hurt – kit – bandages – doctor – safe

At our school, the nurse's room has a big first aid kit. It contains (1)....., plasters, scissors, and medicine for small accidents. Students must tell a teacher or a nurse if someone is (2)..... . The nurse keeps the (3)..... clean and full. It helps everyone stay (4)....., but we must play carefully to avoid getting hurt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Last summer, Hamza and Farida went to Egypt with their family. They saw the Pyramids and took many photos because the Pyramids were amazing. Then, they visited an Egyptian temple and learned about Egyptian history. After that, they went on a boat on the Nile River. They were excited when they saw palm trees and birds. They had a really fun day because they saw all these beautiful places.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hamza and Farida went to last summer.
a) Egypt b) France c) Italy d) India
- 2 They saw the and took many photos.
a) Pyramids b) Egyptian Museum c) library d) school

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Hamza and Farida learn?
- 4 Why did Hamza and Farida have a fun day?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 The scarab beetle (break) down waste at the moment.
- 2 She (can't) draw when she was younger.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 side – Maya – by – Nada – and – side – painted.

- 2 hobbies – do – When – perform – you – your?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 what advice did the doctor give fady?

- 2 adam wants to play the piano and sing

8 Write a fiction story of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

“My trip in a spaceship”

Who went on the trip with you? – What did your spaceship look like? – What did you see in space?

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

2

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. (.....)
- 2 She traveled to space in 2020. (.....)
- 3 Venus is hotter than Earth. (.....)
- 4 Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away. (.....)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

- 1 You use a keyboard to make music when you the piano.
a) sing b) play c) write d) listen
- 2 When Ahmed was young, he ride a bicycle.
a) can b) can't c) wasn't d) couldn't
- 3 This is the chair in the room.
a) comfortable b) most comfortable
c) comfortable than d) comfortable then
- 4 The nurse prepared the room for the patient.
a) living b) kitchen c) classroom d) examination

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

receptionist – check – Donations – playrooms – treatment

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo. It is very big and provides free (1)..... for sick children. Friendly nurses and helpers help with (2)....., tests, and treatment plans. The hospital has (3)....., libraries, and teachers so children can study and have fun while getting better. (4)..... and teamwork help children become healthy and strong again.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Next weekend, our class is going to travel to Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. We will pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. The campsite is going to be crowded, so we need to get our bus tickets today. We are going to set up tents near the mountains, learn about desert plants and animals, and sit around a campfire in the evening. The next morning, we will hike and look for birds. I am going to take many photos of this fun trip.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "crowded" means
a) near b) empty c) quiet d) full of people
- 2 Next weekend, our class is going to travel to
a) Wadi El Gemal Park b) Cairo Museum
c) Alexandria Beach d) Giza Pyramids

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What are they going to pack for the trip?
- 4 When are they going to sit around the campfire?
- 5 What are they going to do the next morning?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 This book is (interesting) than the one I read last week.
- 2 My brother (can't) sing very well at the talent show, so he was sad.

6 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

2

- 1 police – jobs – dogs – do – What – do?

- 2 buffaloes – fields – ploughs – pull – in – Water.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 What is saturn famous for

- 2 many people live near the Nile River.

8 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

7

"A day at the clinic"

medicine – headache – rest

Al-Azhar Tests



Test 1

40



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Sara likes playing (football – the piano – tennis).
- 2 She plays board games with her (friends – cousin – brother).
- 3 Hobbies help her (sleep – learn new skills – watch TV).



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

4

scared – criminals – safe – Horses

Teacher: (1)..... help people feel calm and happy.

Student: Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or (2).....
feel happy.

Teacher: Police dogs help officers catch (3).....

Student: They are very brave and smart, and help keep people (4).....



Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

4

- 1 The Milky Way has many (stars – toys – trees).
- 2 Some farmers (bake – milk – drive) cows every morning.
- 3 Ali (am – are – is) playing board games with his friends.
- 4 If a cut is serious, you (must – don't – mustn't) tell an adult.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

- 1 We mustn't listen to our teachers carefully. (.....)
- 2 We could to visit the museum yesterday. (.....)
- 3 Rami are going to buy a new suitcase. (.....)
- 4 The dog playing every morning. (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

10

People like to spend their free time doing different hobbies. Some children enjoy painting and drawing. Others love playing board games or solving puzzles. Crafting with paper is also a favorite hobby for many. Hobbies make us happy and help us learn new skills.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 Children enjoy painting and drawing. (.....)
- 2 Hobbies make people bored. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Some children like solving (puzzles – sleeping – watching TV).
- 4 Crafting is done using (shoes – paper – clothes).
- 5 Hobbies help children learn (skills – nothing – laziness).



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences:

8

"Feeling sick"

stomachache – medicine – doctor – rest

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 They went to the (park – zoo – museum).
- 2 The zookeeper told them not to (touch – draw – feed) the animals.
- 3 The giraffe has a (short – long – small) neck.



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

4

Jupiter – Milky Way – clouds – astronaut

Noor: I love looking at the sky at night.

Ali : Me too! Last night I saw the (1)..... .

Noor: I also learned about the planet (2)..... in our solar system.

Ali : Imagine flying through space like a real (3)..... .

Noor: I like watching (4)..... floating in the sky!



Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

4

- 1 The nurse gives (medicine – toys – clothes) to the patients.
- 2 We need a (book – ticket – chair) to travel by train.
- 3 Mona (went – go – goes) to the clinic yesterday.
- 4 Students (must – mustn't – haven't) run in the classroom.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

- 1 They could finished the project on time. (.....)
- 2 She is going to meets her friends tonight. (.....)
- 3 We usually enjoys playing board games. (.....)
- 4 Mount Everest is the higher mountain in the world. (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions

10

Ali felt sick and went to the clinic. He had a headache and a sore throat. The nurse checked his temperature and called the doctor. The doctor gave him some medicine and told him to rest. After a few days, Ali felt much better.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 Ali had a sore throat. (.....)
- 2 The doctor gave him some juice. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 The nurse checked Ali's (temperature – shoes – homework).
- 4 Ali had to take (medicine – pencils – toys).
- 5 He felt better after (two hours – two months – a few days).



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences:

8

"My favorite hobby"

singing – dancing – painting – excitement

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Basant's mother took her to the (clinic – park – school).
- 2 The nurse gave her (bread – toys – medicine).
- 3 Basant felt (better – worse – tired) after resting at home.



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

4

reading – basketball – plants – paintings

Sara : Look! I finished my beautiful (1)..... in the art room.

Omar : I can teach my friends (2)..... skills on the playground.

Laila : I organized a (3)..... corner in the library.

Kareem : I started a small garden to teach the enjoyment of caring for (4)..... .



Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

4

- 1 If you have a sore throat, you should visit the (school – park – clinic).
- 2 The (cow – police dog – beetle) helps catch criminals.
- 3 You (are – should – shouldn't) sleep early.
- 4 He (is watching – watches – watched) TV right now.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

- 1 I can speaking English well. (.....)
- 2 She must washes her hands before eating. (.....)
- 3 She is going to sings a song. (.....)
- 4 She go to school every day. (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions

10

Noor looked at the stars through a telescope. She imagined flying in a spaceship to visit Mars. She hoped to meet a friendly alien. The solar system has planets like Earth, Jupiter, and Saturn. Astronauts travel in rockets and wear space suits.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 Noor looked at the stars through a telescope. (.....)
- 2 The solar system has only one planet. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Noor imagined flying in a (spaceship – car – bike).
- 4 Noor hoped to meet a (police dog – cow – friendly alien) on Mars.
- 5 Astronauts wear (space suits – shoes – hats).



Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR sentences:

8

"Exploring space"

moon – astronaut – rocket – Milky Way

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Rami packed his (backpack – suitcase – shoes).
- 2 He traveled by (train – bus – plane).
- 3 The hotel was (cold – warm – crowded).



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

4

hotel – suitcase – hike – plane

Rami : We're going on holiday! I packed my (1)..... last night.

Mona: Great! Are we taking the (2)..... to our destination?

Rami : Yes, and we will stay in a big (3)..... near the beach.

Mona: I can't wait for our first (4)..... in the mountains.



Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

4

- 1 Hobbies give children (excitement – fear – tiredness).
- 2 (Earth – Moon – Mars) is the Red Planet.
- 3 They (watch – are watching – watched) a movie now.
- 4 Rami (is going to – goes – went) buy a new suitcase.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

- 1 She can't meet us last week. (.....)
- 2 Ali and I goes to the park on Saturdays. (.....)
- 3 We are going to hiking in the mountains. (.....)
- 4 She could swims very well when she was young. (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions

10

A family went camping in the desert. They stayed in a tent. They took blankets, sleeping bags, and food. Every morning, they hiked along the trails and at night they sat around the campfire. Camping in nature is fun and healthy for children.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 The family went camping in the desert. (.....)
- 2 They stayed in a hotel. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 They took (pencils – food – shoes).
- 4 They hiked along the (trails – shops – roads).
- 5 Camping is (healthy – boring – dangerous) for children.



Writing

6 Write an e-mail of FOUR sentences to your friend about a camping trip. Your name is Youssef, and your friend's name is Ali.

8

"A camping trip"

campfire – trail – tent – warm clothes

New Messages
✖

To:

From:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

- 1 The police dog helped find a lost (toy – boy – girl).
- 2 Farmers keep (cows – lions – tigers).
- 3 Pigeons can carry (dogs – messages – toys).

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

4

nurse – headache – medicine – check

Sara: I feel very sick today. I have a (1)..... and a sore throat.

Ali : You should go to the clinic. The (2)..... will help you.

Sara: I hope she gives me some (3)..... to feel better.

Ali : Don't worry. She will (4)..... your throat carefully.



Vocabulary and Structures

3 Choose the correct answer:

4

- 1 Discussion with friends improves (thinking – eating – sleeping).
- 2 The first aid kit has (shirts – bandages – pens).
- 3 Students (must – mustn't – are) be quiet in the library.
- 4 Hobbies always (made – makes – make) children happy.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

8

- 1 You mustn't eats too much chocolate. (.....)
- 2 She can drawing very well. (.....)
- 3 They is going to play football after school. (.....)
- 4 Ali play football every morning. (.....)



Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions

10

The farmer has a herd of cows and sheep. He watches over them carefully. Guard dogs help protect the farm. Some beetles and egrets are useful to keep the crops safe. Animals and insects have important jobs.

A Write "True" or "False":

- 1 The farmer has cows and sheep. (.....)
- 2 Beetles harm the crops. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Guard dogs protect the (shop – farm – school).
- 4 The farmer watches over (animals – books – cars).
- 5 Egrets are (useful – dangerous – lazy).



Writing

6 Write a short story of FOUR sentences:

8

"At the clinic"

headache – medicine – nurse – doctor

.....

.....

.....

.....

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

The teacher tells the students about the "Hobby Talent Show class". Maya will show drawing and painting. She might do some crafting with paper. Adam will perform by playing the piano and singing a song. Maya loves cycling and skating in the park. Nour's hobby is story writing; she sometimes writes stories or journals. The teacher tells them that hobbies make them special.

Test Yourself (1)

Last week, we started a Hobby Club. Omar and Adam both joined. Omar taught us about teamwork when playing board games. Adam performed a song, but he couldn't play the piano well when he was younger. Everyone agreed that having hobbies helps us relax. The club will meet every week.

Test Yourself (2)

Adam enjoys solving puzzles with his family. He says it is a great activity that helps him learn teamwork. He could only place a few pieces when he was younger, but now he can finish them quickly. Nour's hobby is story writing. She sometimes writes stories in her journals. She always shares her journals with her mother.

Al-Azhar Corner

Laila organized a reading corner, and her love for books made her classmates want to read more. The Hobby Club soon became a place of creativity, friendship, and fun.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

Yesterday, Fady went to the clinic because he had a sore throat and a bad cough. The doctor took him to the examination room and checked him. The doctor said, "It's not serious, but you need some rest." After that, Fady went to the pharmacy to get his medicine. Now he feels much better, but sometimes his stomach hurts a little.

Practice on Lesson 3

I am Fatma. I read about 57-3-57. It is a famous children's hospital in Cairo. It is known around the world. The most important thing is that all treatment is free. Many people in Egypt donate money to the hospital. The hospital has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places so children can feel happy and safe.

Test Yourself (1)

At the clinic, there are many patients. Some patients may have a sore throat, a fever, a headache, or a stomachache. The nurses help the patients and take them to the examination room. The doctor checks each patient carefully. He gives them medicine and some advice. After that, the patients go to the pharmacy to get their medicine.

Test Yourself (2)

Ali went to the clinic because he had a headache and hurt his leg. The doctor said it was not serious, but he must rest. The nurse gave him some medicine and bandages for small cuts. Ali feels better now. He mustn't eat too much candy and should wash his hands regularly.

Al-Azhar Corner

There is a very important place in our school called the nurse's room. It has a big first aid kit that is always clean and ready. If a student is injured, they must immediately tell the nurse or a teacher. We must all be careful when playing."

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

Sara and her friend Maya are going to travel to Alexandria together. They are going to pack their suitcases tonight. Sara is going to pack her summer clothes, swimming suit, and her camera. Maya has all the tickets. They are excited to see the Qaitbay Citadel and the new library. They can't wait to swim and build sandcastles by the beach.

Test Yourself (1)

My name is Yara. I'm so glad. My family decided to go to Alexandria next week. I have to pack my suitcase. I put everything in the suitcase except my toothbrush. My mom said the bus is going to be very crowded because it's the summer vacation, but we can sing songs to make the time pass quickly.

Test Yourself (2)

Next weekend, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with warm outfits, a torch, and a water bottle. When we arrive, we are going to set up our tents near some amazing mountains. Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals.

Al-Azhar Corner

I'm Hassan. I'm going to travel for a camping trip tomorrow. I'm going to hike on a nature trail and look for special birds. Before I leave, I'm going to clean the campsite carefully to keep it clean. This is going to be my first camping trip, and I think it is going to be so much fun!

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 2

Scarab beetles work in the soil and help make it better for plants to grow. Water buffaloes, donkeys, pigeons, falcons, geckos, and scarab beetles all play special roles and show how animals and people help each other.

Test Yourself (1)

Egrets help farmers by eating insects that damage crops. They often walk near water buffaloes and even stand on their backs to catch flies. These smart birds keep the fields clean and help farmers grow healthy plants without using many chemicals.

Test Yourself (2)

Omar visits his uncle's farm and sees many helpful animals. Cows give us milk, sheep provide wool, and chickens lay eggs. A dog guards the sheep, and a cat catches mice. Horses and donkeys help with work. Omar learns that animals help people every day.

Al-Azhar Corner

In Egypt, many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives. On farms, strong water buffaloes pull ploughs

through the fields. Right now, a farmer is working with his water buffalo to prepare the soil for planting crops.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

Sara and Omar are at the planetarium. They watch a show about space and learn that Mars is called the Red Planet because its soil is full of iron, which makes it look red. They also hear that Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system and that Saturn has shiny rings around it.

Practice on Lesson 3

Nada and Adam were classmates in science class. Their teacher asked them to make a classroom poster about the planets.

At first, Adam wanted to do everything himself, but the work took too long. Adam let Nada work with him. They finished the poster. They learned that working together makes the job easier—and better.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a big, shiny spaceship. The rocket made a loud noise. When the spaceship landed, I saw a fun playground in space. The swings were made of light, and the slide looked so colorful. I met an alien with big eyes. He showed me his planet.

Test Yourself (1)

We visited the space museum. The guide explained some facts about space. Our galaxy is called the Milky Way. Saturn has shiny rings. Mars is called the Red Planet because of its iron-rich soil. Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

Test Yourself (2)

Hana and Ramy were classmates in science class. Their teacher asked them to make a poster about the planets. At first, Ramy worked alone, but it took too long and looked messy. The next day, Hana helped him. Together, they finished quickly, and their teacher liked it.

Al-Azhar Corner

I am Mariam. Last week, I went to the planetarium with my school. We watched the Sun and the Moon on a big screen. We also watched Mars. It is called the Red Planet. It was an exciting day.

Final Tests

Test 1

Omar loves board games. He plays them with his friends after finishing his chores. His sister likes skating and singing. On weekends, their family joins a talent show where everyone can perform and show their hobby. It's always full of fun and excitement.

Test 2

Rana spends her free time painting pictures. She also enjoys crafting with paper and making colorful flowers. Her brother prefers playing the piano. Their parents say that these activities help them relax and learn new skills while having fun together.

Test 3

Salma woke up with a sore throat and a headache. Her mother took her to the examination room at the clinic. The doctor gave her some medicine and told her to drink warm water. After a few days, Salma felt much better and returned to school.

Test 4

Nader packed his suitcase because he was going to travel to Aswan. He took his ticket and planned to visit the temples and tombs there. The city was crowded, but he enjoyed the Nile cruise and took many pictures with his family.

Test 5

A police dog helps officers find criminals. Another dog, called a guide dog, helps blind people walk safely. Farmers use water buffalo to pull ploughs in the fields. These animals work hard every day and make people's lives easier.

Test 6

In the planetarium, students learn about the solar system. They see Mercury, Venus, and Mars. An astronaut explains how he flew in a spaceship. Everyone looks amazed at the big screen showing the Milky Way and bright stars.

Test 7

The solar system has eight planets. Earth is the only one with life. Jupiter is the largest planet, and Mercury is the smallest. An astronaut can travel in a rocket to explore space. The universe is full of mystery and beauty.

Test 8

Mona made a survey at school about hobbies. Most students said they liked building puzzles, while others enjoyed cycling or painting. The teacher said hobbies show talent and help students spend their time wisely. Mona learned that everyone has a special interest.

Test 9

Khaled fell off his bike and had a small accident. His knee was bleeding, so his father used the first aid kit. He cleaned the cut and put a plaster and some bandages on it. Khaled was happy because his father knew how to help him safely.

Test 10

Lina and her friends went camping near the river. They built sandcastles and sat around the campfire at night. They enjoyed the warm weather and sang songs. The next morning, they went on a hike along the trail and watched birds flying over the water.

Test 11

Egrets help farmers by eating pests. These white birds walk beside water buffalo and eat mosquitoes and hoppers. They keep the fields clean and healthy. Farmers say these birds are very useful and easy to see in the fields.

Test 12

Ramy imagined flying through soft clouds in his spaceship. He saw an alien holding a glowing star ball. The alien smiled and showed him the planets shining in the galaxy. Ramy felt happy and realized that space is full of wonders.

Test 13

The receptionist at the hospital told Hany to check in before seeing the doctor. He had a high fever, and the doctor said it wasn't serious. After the treatment, Hany went to the pharmacy to get his medicine and thanked everyone for their help.

Test 14

In Egypt, falcons and pigeons were once used to carry messages. Farmers grow crops with the help of buffalo and use barns to keep grain. The gecko and scarab beetle are also common animals. All these creatures are part of Egypt's rich history.

Test 15

Layla loves cycling, painting, and singing. When she feels tired, she takes a rest to avoid a headache. During holidays, she travels with her family to the beach. They sit around a campfire and look at the stars in the night sky.

Test 16

Hobbies are activities we enjoy in our free time, and they help us relax and stay happy. Many hobbies, such as drawing, singing, cycling, or solving puzzles, teach us new skills and help us become more creative and confident. Hobbies make our lives better by keeping us active, smart, and cheerful.

Test 17

At our school, the nurse's room has a big first aid kit. It contains bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for small accidents. Students must tell a teacher or nurse if someone is hurt. The nurse keeps the kit clean and full. It helps everyone stay safe, but we must play carefully to avoid getting hurt.

Test 18

In Egypt, many animals help people every day. Water buffaloes pull ploughs to prepare fields for crops. Donkeys carry heavy loads to villages and markets, knowing their routes well. Pigeons work as messengers, carrying notes and letters between places. These animals play important roles on farms and in villages, showing how they help people in their daily lives.

Test 19

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut and the first Arab engineer in space, traveling in 2022. She studied the solar system and planets, explaining that Mercury is smaller than Earth. Venus is hotter than Earth. Mars is

drier than Earth, while Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn has beautiful rings. Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away.

Al-Azhar Tests

Test 1

Sara loves spending her free time doing different hobbies. She likes painting and playing the piano. Every Friday, she plays board games with her brother. Hobbies make her feel happy and help her learn new skills.

Test 2

Yesterday, we went to the zoo with our teacher. We saw lions, monkeys, and elephants. The zookeeper told us not to feed the animals. My favorite animal was the giraffe because it has a long neck.

Test 3

Yesterday, Basant had a headache and a sore throat. Her mother took her to the clinic. The nurse checked her temperature and gave her some medicine. Basant felt better after resting at home.

Test 4

Rami packed his suitcase for a trip abroad. He traveled by plane with his family. The hotel was warm and near a campsite. They enjoyed hiking on the trail and sitting by the campfire every night.

Test 5

The police dog helped find a lost girl. Farmers keep cows and sheep in the field. Pigeons can carry messages, and beetles help clean the farm. Everyone works together to keep animals safe.

Writing Answers

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1 Practice on Lesson 2

"My hobby"

(drawing – cycling – singing)

My favorite hobby is drawing because I love creating art. I also enjoy being active, so I often go cycling after school. When I am home, I practice singing my favorite songs. Hobbies make my free time great.

Practice on Lesson 3

"A Hobby Club"

(talent – creativity – reading corner)

The Hobby Club is a great place to show your talent. We spend time there improving our creativity through arts and crafts. We also have a special reading corner where members can share books and stories. It is lots of fun!

Test Yourself (1)

"How to start a new hobby"

(First – Next – Finally)

Hobbies help us relax and learn new things about life. First, think about what you really enjoy. Then, get the tools you need and start practicing step by step. Finally, keep trying and enjoy your hobby with your friends and family.

Test Yourself (2)

"A Hobby Club at our school"

(leadership – creativity – reading)

Our Hobby Club at school is fantastic! It helps us improve leadership skills when we organize activities. We also show our creativity through art and crafts. We always enjoy our time in the reading corner with all our favorite books.

Al-Azhar Corner

"My hobbies"

(board games – cycling – drawing – singing)

I have many hobbies that keep me busy in my free time. I enjoy playing board games with my family. I also love cycling outdoors. When I am feeling creative, I spend time drawing or singing my favorite songs. These activities are fun!

UNIT 2 Practice on Lesson 2

"Helping an injured student"

(nurse – first aid kit – bandages)

If a student is injured, we must quickly call the nurse. She always uses the first aid kit to treat them. She will clean the cut and carefully put on bandages to keep it clean. This helps the student feel better fast.

Practice on Lesson 3

"Hospital 57-3-57"

(famous – receptionist – hope)

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt. It is known not only in Egypt but also around the world. The hospital is very big. There are kind receptionists who help the children check in. Hospital 57-3-57 is full of hope.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

“Living healthy”

(healthy habits – wash – exercise)

We should follow healthy habits. We should wash our hands before and after using the bathroom to stay clean and healthy. We should exercise and run every day to keep our bodies strong. We should get enough sleep. We should sleep at least eight to ten hours.

Test Yourself (1)

“Healthy habits”

(eat more vegetables – play outside daily – wash my hands)

I want to be healthy and strong. I eat more vegetables and fruits. I don't eat unhealthy food. I drink plenty of water. I play outside daily and exercise. I always wash my hands after using the bathroom to stay clean.

Test Yourself (2)

“Visiting the doctor”

(sore throat – follow doctor's advice – take medicine)

Last week I had a sore throat and a fever. I visited the doctor's clinic. The doctor told me that I looked a little weak. I followed the doctor's advice. I rested and drank warm liquids. I took the medicine. I feel better now.

Al-Azhar Corner

“How to stay safe”

(safe – injured – nurse – first aid kit)

To stay safe at school, we must always play carefully. If someone gets injured, we should immediately tell the nurse. She will use the first aid kit to help them. Knowing these steps keeps us all protected.

UNIT 3 Practice on Lesson 2

“Places to visit in Egypt”

(Pyramids – temple – the Nile)

Egypt is full of wonderful places to visit. Tourists always see the amazing Pyramids in Giza. They can also explore an ancient temple near Luxor. A peaceful boat trip along the Nile River is a wonderful activity.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

“Your friend's visit to Egypt”

(Pyramids – the Nile – koshari)

My friend had a fantastic visit to Egypt. She saw the amazing Pyramids and took a lovely boat trip along the Nile River. She enjoyed eating the famous Egyptian food, koshari. It was delicious. She loved everything about the trip!

Test Yourself (1)

“A special trip to Egypt”

(Pyramids – temples – the Nile)

My family went on a special trip to Egypt last year. We visited the ancient Pyramids in Giza. We visited Luxor and explored many beautiful temples. We also enjoyed a relaxing boat ride on the Nile River. It was amazing!

Test Yourself (2)

“Your school camping trip”

(suitcases – campsite – torch)

We are going to pack our suitcases for our school camping trip. We are going to arrive at a beautiful campsite. We are going to set up our tents quickly. We are going to use a torch to find our way around at night. It is going to be an exciting adventure!

Al-Azhar Corner

“A visit to Egypt”

(visit – country – Nile River – koshari)

I am going to visit the beautiful country of Egypt. I am going to see the famous Nile River. I am going to try koshari for lunch. It is going to be a great trip.

UNIT 4 Practice on Lesson 1

“The smartest animal you know”

(What is the smartest animal you know? – What makes this animal special to you? – Where does this animal live?)

I think the dolphin is the smartest animal. It lives in the ocean and is special. In some countries, rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea. These animals show us that helping others is a very special job.

Practice on Lesson 3

“A visit to the farm”

(What animals did you see there? – What did the farmer do? – What did you like most?)

I had a great visit to the farm. I saw many animals like cows, chickens, and sheep. The farmer was busy feeding the animals and milking the cows. I liked helping the farmer collect the fresh eggs. It was fun.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

“How birds help farmers”

(What do the birds eat? – How does this help the crops? – Why do farmers like the birds?)

Birds help farmers in the fields. They eat insects that harm crops, like grasshoppers and flies. This keeps the plants healthy and strong. Farmers like the birds because they protect the crops without using many chemicals.

Test Yourself (1)

“How animals help people”

(fields – crops – loads)

Animals help people in many ways. Water buffaloes pull ploughs in the fields. Donkeys carry heavy loads to the market. Falcons hunt small animals that damage crops. Pigeons carry messages, and geckos eat insects to keep homes clean.

Test Yourself (2)

“My favorite animal helper”

(What is your favorite animal helper? – How does this animal help people? – Why do you like this animal?)

My favorite animal helper is the dog. Dogs help people in many ways. Police dogs find lost people and catch bad ones. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely. Dogs are smart, kind, and always ready to help.

Al-Azhar Corner

“How horses help people”

(spend time – calm – feel – better)

Horses help people feel much better in many ways. When we spend time with them, they help us become calm. They can make someone who is sad or scared feel much better.

UNIT 5 Practice on Lesson 2

“The first astronaut”

(female – engineer – inspire)

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She flew to space in 2022 as part of a private mission, becoming one of the first Arab women to travel into space. She wants to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible.

Practice on Lesson 3

“Teamwork”

(poster – help each other – easier)

Teamwork is important. Our teacher asked us to make a poster. Our poster was about planets. My friend and I helped each other. Our poster was bright and clear, and our teacher was happy. Working together makes the job easier and better.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

“Your trip in a spaceship”

(dream – moon – alien)

Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a big, shiny spaceship with round windows. I saw the moon. It looked like a lamp. I met a kind alien with big eyes who smiled at me. I talked with him.

Test Yourself (1)

“My trip to space”

(spaceship – planets – sun)

I am an astronaut. I travel to space in a spaceship. I studied the solar system and the planets. I like to see the sun and describe it. Our galaxy is bigger than we imagine. Exploring the space is very exciting.

Test Yourself (2)

“Working together”

(together – easier – faster)

Today, our teacher talked with us about teamwork. He told us about working together. Working together makes the job easier and better. Working together is faster than working alone. It also helps us learn from each other and share new ideas.

Al-Azhar Corner

“My planet project”

(teacher – classmate – bright – teamwork)

The teacher asked us to do a project about planets. I worked with my classmates. We finished the bright project. The teacher liked our teamwork.

كراسة تسميع الكلمات

Dictation Copybook



Unit 1

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	الغناء	.....	التزلج
.....	عرض المواهب	.....	الرسم باستخدام الألوان
.....	يؤدي	.....	حل الألغاز
.....	الأشغال اليدوية بالورق	.....	هواية
.....	مميز	.....	متعة
.....	لعب ألعاب الطاولة	.....	يوميات
.....	عزف البيانو	.....	ركوب الدراجات

Lesson 2

.....	أنشطة	.....	حل المشكلات
.....	مهارات	.....	نشط
.....	الصبر	.....	العمل الجماعي
.....	وقت فراغ	.....	إبداع

Lesson 3

.....	زميل الدراسة	.....	قيادة
.....	النادي	.....	ترتيب
.....	غرفة الرسم	.....	الصدقة
.....	الإثارة	.....	ركن للقراءة
.....	مناقشة	.....	سريع

Lessons 4 and 5

.....	بعد ذلك	.....	أولاً
.....	ممتاز/مثالي	.....	ثم
.....	تقدم	.....	آلة موسيقية
.....	في الحال	.....	أخيراً
.....	يتناسب مع/ يتوافق	.....	استبيان / استطلاع رأي



Unit 2

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	صداع	.....	حمى
.....	سعال / كحة	.....	غرفة الفحص
.....	ألم بالحلق	.....	خطير / جاد
.....	سوائل	.....	مريض
.....	صيدلية	.....	دواء

Lesson 2

.....	جروح	.....	كدمات
.....	عدة الإسعافات الأولية	.....	حوادث
.....	ضمادات	.....	مقص
.....	مصاب	.....	لاصقات طبية
.....	آمن	.....	إذن / تصريح
.....	طالب	.....	خطير

Lesson 3

.....	تبرعات	.....	تحاليل
.....	مستشفى الأطفال	.....	مجاناً
.....	موظف استقبال	.....	تسجيل الوصول
.....	تحاليل	.....	خطة علاج

Lessons 4 and 5

.....	مؤدب	.....	طلب
.....	يتدرب	.....	عقل
.....	أجازة مرضية	.....	صحي

Unit 3

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	يسافر	.....	حقيبة سفر
.....	شاطئ	.....	مزدحم
.....	تذكرة	.....	مكتبة الإسكندرية
.....	تحزم أمتعتها	.....	محطة أتوبيس

Lesson 2

.....	ملابس خفيفة	.....	الأهرامات
.....	رحلة نهريّة	.....	معبد مصري
.....	فراغة	.....	قارب في النيل
.....	جزيرة	.....	قوى

Lesson 3

.....	رحلة تخيم	.....	لحظات
.....	نار المخيم	.....	ممر/مسار
.....	المشى لمسافات طويلة	.....	خيام
.....	جبل	.....	مخيم/معسكر
.....	طبيعة	.....	كشاف يدوى

Lessons 4 and 5

.....	لذيذ/شهى	.....	فصل الصيف
.....	مركبة	.....	طعام مصري



Unit 4

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	دولفين	.....	كلب بوليسي
.....	مجرمون	.....	كلب مرشد
.....	شجاع	.....	خيول

Lesson 2

.....	محاريث	.....	جاموس الماء
.....	محاصيل زراعية	.....	حمار
.....	حاويات	.....	حمامة
.....	أحمال	.....	صقر
.....	ناضج	.....	خنفساء الجعران
.....	تربة	.....	رسل

Lesson 3

.....	سترة صوفية	.....	حظيرة
.....	يحب	.....	حبوب
.....	أغنام	.....	فئران
.....	عربات	.....	عشب

Lessons 4 and 5

.....	الحياة البرية	.....	فيلم وثائقي
.....	منقار	.....	مواد كيميائية
.....	جراد	.....	البشونات



Unit 5

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	الشمس	.....	متحف فضائي
.....	القمر	.....	كوكب الأرض
.....	النظام الشمسي	.....	مرشد
.....	مجرة	.....	درب التبانة
.....	كوكب	.....	حلقات
.....	قبة سماوية	.....	مثير

Lesson 2

.....	يلهم	.....	الكون
.....	عربي	.....	يدرك
.....	أنثى	.....	الشباب
.....	رائد فضاء	.....	مهندس

Lesson 3

.....	واضح	.....	حصة العلوم
.....	ساطع/لامع	.....	ملصق
.....	ضوء الشمس	.....	زميل دراسة
.....	حقائق	.....	قلق

Lessons 4 and 5

.....	سفينة فضاء	.....	مظلم
.....	صاروخ	.....	كائن فضائي
.....	أرجوحة	.....	حافة
.....	زلاجة	.....	دائري
.....	غيار	.....	ناعم

